



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

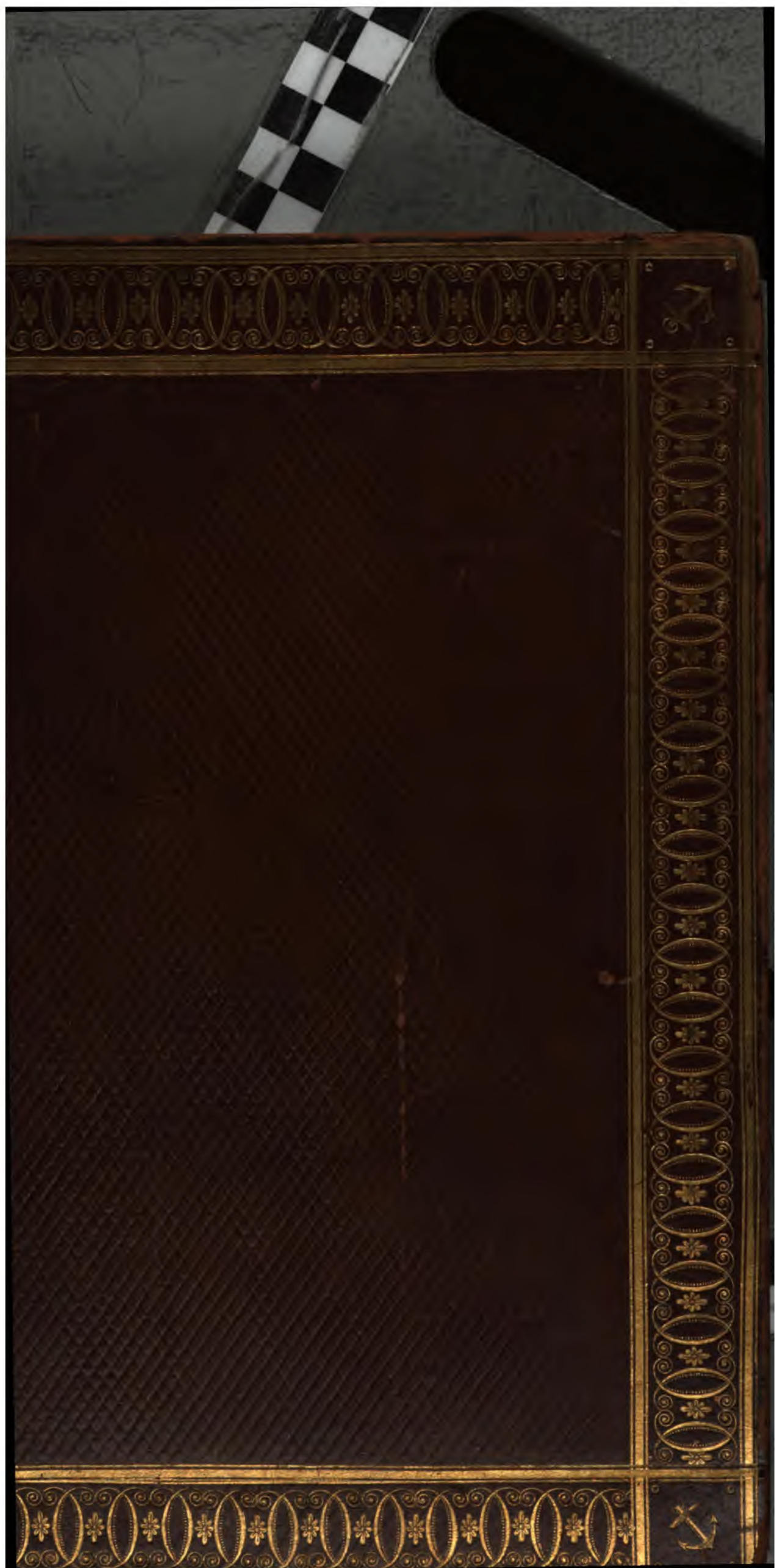
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

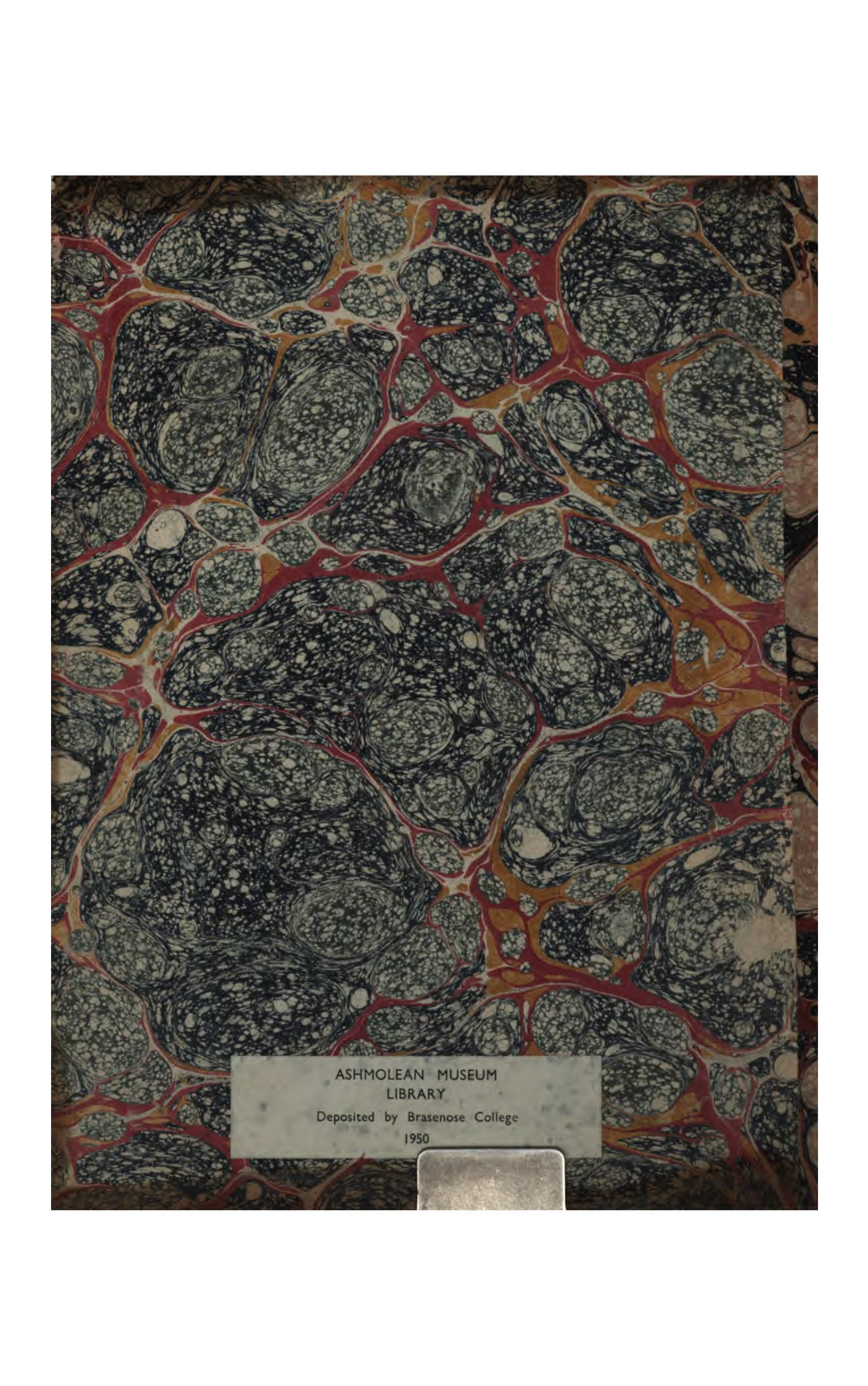
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



The background of the entire image is a traditional marbled paper pattern. It features a complex, organic design with large, irregular, cell-like shapes. The primary colors are a deep, mottled black and a dark charcoal grey. These are separated by thin, branching veins of a vibrant red and a warm, golden-brown or ochre color. The overall effect is reminiscent of biological tissue or a microscopic view of certain minerals.

ASHMOLEAN MUSEUM
LIBRARY

Deposited by Brasenose College
1950



302971577+

Latham IV-7

~~116~~ 112

G 1 19

0 1 2

~~3~~
~~R 49~~



THE
VOYAGE OF NEARCHUS,
AND
THE PERIPLUS
OF
THE ERYTHREAN SEA,

Translated from the Greek

BY
WILLIAM VINCENT, D.D.

DEAN OF WESTMINSTER.

OXFORD,

AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, FOR THE AUTHOR;

AND SOLD BY MESSRS. CADELL AND DAVIES IN THE STRAND, LONDON.

1809.



CONTENTS.

DEDICATION	- - - - -	page vii.
Preface	- - - - -	ix.
On the Coin of Alexander	- - - - -	xiii.
Greek Text of the Seventeen first Chapters of Arrian's Indian History	- - - - -	1.
Abstract from the first Seventeen Chapters	- - - - -	15.
Voyage of Nearchus, Greek and English	- - - - -	25.
Periplús of the Erythréan Sea, Greek and English	- - - - -	71.
On Mdmbarus	- - - - -	111.
Sequel to the Periplús of the Erythréan Sea	- - - - -	113.
Notices	- - - - -	118.
Errors corrected	- - - - -	120.

TO
THE REV. ROBERT NARES, A. M.
ARCHDEACON OF STAFFORD,
AND
CANON RESIDENTIARY OF LITCHFIELD.

DEAR SIR,

IF Patronage has a demand upon the gratitude of an author, Friendship has a claim of equal validity, which the ungenerous alone will refuse to acknowledge. But an uninterrupted friendship of forty years continuance imposes obligations of superior importance: it confiders advice on the one part, and attention on the other, as reciprocal duties, and interchangeable according to the exigencies which may occur.

I had concluded my Commentary on Ancient Commerce, I had relinquished my pursuits connected with the subject, and I had promised to intrude no more upon the indulgence of the public: but you have constantly maintained, that the Commentary, without the Originals, was incomplete; and that the Original in one instance was either not procurable, or, if procured, that the value was inadequate to the price.

In deference therefore to your judgment, I have proceeded to the execution of your plan; and I submit the result of my labour, not without hesitation, to the tribunal of the Public. Profitable it cannot be; and credit, if credit should accrue, I shall consider as derived from suggestions originating in the partiality of a friend: but in no case shall the failure of my hopes diminish the regard and esteem which I owe you for the sincerity of your advice, or the constancy of your attachment. Impressed with these sentiments, I subscribe myself

Your faithful friend and servant,

WILLIAM VINCENT.

July 1, 1809.

P R E F A C E.

ALL the editions of the Periplûs of the Erythræan Sea are now so scarce, that a single copy is seldom to be met with in the most extensive catalogues. This has been the principal inducement for undertaking the following publication.

A second object was, to enable every class of readers to compare the contents of both the originals with the Commentary already published, and to judge whether the deductions were correct, or the conclusions justifiable.

To effect this purpose, the translations are given in a style of language suitable to the narrative of a navigator and a merchant: all embellishment therefore, or curiosity of expression, are disclaimed. But if I have failed in giving the genuine sense of the originals, or in preserving the purity of the English idiom, it is but lost labour after all.

The version is not literal, neither (if executed according to its intention) will it be thought diffuse. To compress is more desirable than to dilate; but circumlocution is preferable to obscurity.

The language of the Periplûs, more especially, is so abrupt and concise, that without the aid of insertions, in some instances, the sentence would be incomplete; and in others, unless some liberty

of expression were allowed, perspicuity would be utterly unattainable.

If I have persuaded myself that I am better qualified for an interpreter of these works than many others of superior talents and acquirements, it does not arise from presumption, but from the contemplation of these subjects for many years, and from the possession of materials, which few would have had the curiosity to collect, and fewer still the patience to arrange and prepare for publication.

It was originally intended to give the text, Greek and English, without farther remarks; a few notes have been now added for the purpose of correction, and to save the trouble of perpetual reference: but wherever investigation is requisite, recourse must be had to the former work.

The Greek text of both the following works is that of Nicolas Blancard; but in the *Voyage of Nearchus* it has been corrected from the edition of Gronovius, (Leyden, 1704.) and most of the readings of his best Florentine manuscript admitted into the text. That manuscript was one of those procured by Lorenzo de Medicis, and it is inestimable.

The *Periplus* has received but little correction since its first publication by Gelenius at Basle, 1533. The edition of Stuckius (Geneva, 1577.) has large Scholia; but, in a geographical point of view, of no great value.

The Oxford edition by Hudson, 1698, is most accurately printed; but the state of the text, where defective, is rarely touched. The few marginal notes he has added are not of importance, and some of them are erroneous; but without MSS. he did wisely in

giving the text correctly, and leaving the difficulties as they stood.

Blancard's edition (Amsterdam, 1680, as appears by the Dedication) is professedly from Stuckius; his scholia, though learned, add little to our geographical knowledge: and in his edition of the History and Indica of Arrian, which bears date 1668, he, among other editors of the same works, falls, sometimes not unjustly, under the severe lash of Gronovius.

His edition of the Periplûs I was obliged to adopt, because I could obtain no other to use as copy: neither did I know of its existence, till it was procured for me within these few months. It is contained in a volume which comprises the Tactics, the treatise on Hunting, the Periplûs of the Euxine Sea, and the Commentary on Epictetus, all by Arrian; and this Periplûs of the Erythræan Sea, usually bearing the name of Arrian, was assigned, with the others, to Arrian of Nicomédia, whose work it certainly is not. I find these several tracts bear different dates, as 1680. 1681. 1683. and I conclude therefore, that the rareness of this volume proceeds either from the interval between their respective publication; or that, when the tracts were collected into a body, the impression was confined to a small number of copies. This indeed is a mere conjecture; but I had never met with this volume, while the other is common in every catalogue.

The stadium employed in the Voyage of Nearchus is supposed to be a stadium of 51 French toises, about 15 of which are equal to a mile Roman, 16 to a mile English, and 1111 to a degree.

The stadium employed in the Periplûs of the Erythræan Sea is supposed to be a stadium of which 10 are equal to a mile Roman.



APERIAM TERRAS GENTIBUS.



*Drawn & Engraved by W. Bond?
from a scarce coin in the Bodleian Library, Oxford.*

Published April, 1808, by W. Vincent.

THE
PORTRAIT OF ALEXANDER,
FROM
A COIN

IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY AT OXFORD.

To MR. JOHN PRICE, principal Librarian of the Bodleian, I am indebted for access to this singular Coin, and the knowledge of its existence in the Winchelsea collection; and with much gratitude I acknowledge his communication of the evidence on which its authenticity is established, and his obliging readiness in permitting it to be engraved.

THE Coin from which this Head of Alexander is engraved, forms part of the Earl of Winchelsea's Collection, which was purchased by Mr. Charles Godwyn, Fellow of Balliol College, and by his will bequeathed to the University of Oxford. It is apparently^a the same as Chauffard's No. 5, mentioned erroneously as brass, in the account of the former engraving. But it is a silver dióbolus, or third of a drachma, nearly the size of an English threepence, and ought to weigh twenty-two grains and one

^a Publicola Chauffard published a French translation of Arrian in 1802, and gave a Table of Alexander's Coins. At p. 140. he cites Haym, tom. ii. p. 13. and his Catalogue raisonné, p. 2. adding, *quoique dans ce dernier on ne trouve point de corne*. Whether Haym's Catalogue differs from his Tesoro Britannico, I cannot say; but in the latter he expressly mentions the horn. In Chauffard's plate the horn is wrinkled like that of a ram, in Lord Winchelsea's Coin it is plain. This raises a doubt either in regard to its identity or its accuracy. But it seems intended for the same, and Chauffard bears ample testimony to the beauty of the work, and the fidelity of the portrait; *elle représente le véritable portrait de ce Prince*.

sixth^b, but has received an injury, which reduces it to twenty grains and an half. Its value is ten farthings and a third. Haym, in his *Tesoro Britannico*, tom. ii. p. 11. has copied the following description of it from the catalogue of Lord Winchelsea.

“ This Coin, which is extremely rare^c, is valuable on several accounts, “ but more particularly as exhibiting a genuine portrait of Alexander, “ which his Coins in general do not: for they usually represent a Jupiter, “ a Hercules with, or without^d a beard, a Pallas^e, &c. &c. but that the “ head on this Coin is a portrait, there is little room to doubt. The “ Diadem and the Horn of Ammon mark the King, and his fictitious de- “ scent from that Deity of the desert. Added to which, the singular “ beauty of the workmanship is a characteristic of the age^f, rarely equalled, “ and perhaps never excelled in any other specimen of the art^g.”

“ The Lion on the reverse is of the same superiority; it may represent “ Fortitude or Power, but more probably relates to a dream of Philip’s, “ recorded by Plutarch, [and noticed by Tertullian] in which he is said “ to have seen the matrix of Olympias, sealed with the figure of a Lion.” Mr. Combe supposes that the Lion refers rather to Hercules, from whom the Kings of Macedon derived their origin.

The present Engraving has been confided to an artist of eminence, and has been submitted during the whole progress of the work to the judgment of Mr. B. West, who has honoured it with his peculiar attention. The opinion of a professional man, whose talents have placed him so deservedly at the head of the British School, may be admitted as decisive upon questions of more importance than the present, and his opinion is this:

^b According to Mr. Combe.

^c It is not found in the British Museum, or in Dr. Hunter’s collection.

^d In Mr. Combe’s opinion the head of Hercules is *never* represented *with* a beard on the coins of Alexander.

^e In some of Le Brun’s Battles the portrait of Alexander is copied from this head of Pallas.

^f Both M. Chauffard, and Mr. Combe of the British Museum, judge the coin to be of later date than the age of Alexander; but both unite in supposing it to be a genuine portrait.

^g This extract consists more properly of the substance than the words of Haym.

“ The Features of the face are not those which the ancient Greek artists gave to their Ideal^b characters of that Prince ; but they are decidedly done from individual features, delineated from Life, or a Bust taken from Life They mark a portrait, and that portrait cannot be any other but Alexander, in the character of young Ammon As a work, I admire the mind of the artist who made the Coin, or formed the composition, for his insight into the harmony of nature It is almost without an example in its department of art, both in the head, and in the Lion on the reverse.”

The general testimony of the historians is uniform in assigning a countenance of singular beauty to Alexander, and it is highly probable that in this Coin we have the peculiar traits which characterized this beauty, and distinguished it from that of every other person. These several evidences in favour of its originality are sanctioned by the concurrent sentiments of Lord Winchelsea, Haym, Chauffard, Mr. Combe, and Mr. West, who all unite in opinion, that it is a genuine resemblance of that Prince, whose name is inscribed on the reverse.

^b There is another Coin of Alexander in Chauffard's plate, No. 7, which, if I understand it right, is the one commented on by Schlager, *De Numo Alexandri Magni*: the character is not very dissimilar from that of No. 5. and Schlager asserts it to be the work of Pyrgoteles, the only artist who was allowed to engrave the resemblance of this Prince. But this assertion is disputed by Chauffard, and the head has neither diadem or horn ; the hair is loose and wild.

ΑΡΡΙΑΝΟΥ

ΙΝΔΙΚΗ.

Ι. ΤΑ ἔξω Ἰνδῷ ποταμῷ τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέ-
ρην ἔς τε ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Κωφῆνα, Ἀσα-
κηνοὶ καὶ Ἀσσακηνοὶ, ἔθνη Ἰνδικὰ, ἐποι-
κέουσιν. Ἀλλ' ἔτε μεγάλοι τὰ σώματα,
κατάπερ οἱ ἐντὸς τῷ Ἰνδῷ ὠκισμένοι, ἔτε
ἀγαθοὶ ὡσαύτως τὸν θυμὸν· ἐδὲ μέλα-
νες ὡσαύτως τοῖς πολλοῖς Ἰνδοῖσιν. Οὗτοι
πάσαι μὲν Ἀσσυρίοις ὑπήκοοι ἦσαν, ἑ-
πτα Μήδοισι, ἐπεὶ δὲ Μῆδοι Περσέων
ἤκουον, καὶ Φόρους ἀπέφερον Κύρῳ τῷ
Καμβύσῃ ἐκ τῆς γῆς σφῶν, οὓς ἔταξε
Κῦρος. Νυσσαῖοι δὲ ἐκ Ἰνδικὸν γένος
ἔσιν, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἅμα Διονύσῳ ἐλθόντων
ἐς τὴν γῆν τῶν Ἰνδῶν· τυχὸν μὲν καὶ Ἑλ-
λῆνων, ὅσοι ἀπόμαχοι αὐτῶν ἐγένοντο ἐν
τοῖς πολέμοις ἔς τινας πρὸς Ἰνδοὺς Διό-
νυσος ἐπολέμησε· τυχὸν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐπι-
χωρίων τὰς ἐθέλοντας τοῖς Ἑλλήσι συν-
ῴκισε· τὴν τε χώραν Νυσσαίην ὠνόμασεν
ἀπὸ τῷ ὄρει τῆς Νύσσης Διόνυσος, καὶ
τὴν πόλιν αὐτῶν Νύσσαν. Καὶ τὸ ὄρος
τὸ πρὸς τῇ πόλει, ὅτε ἐν τῇσιν ὑπάρξουσιν
ὠκισαὶ ἢ Νύσσα, Μηρὸς κληίζεται, ἐπὶ
τῇ συμφορῇ ἣτις ἐχρήσατο εὐδὺς γινό-

μενος. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ ποιηταὶ ἐπὶ Διονύσῳ
ἐποίησαν. Καὶ ἐξηλείδων αὐτὰ ὅσοι λόγιοι
Ἑλλήνων ἢ βαρβάρων. Ἐν Ἀσσακηνοῖσι
ἡ Μάστακα, πόλις μεγάλη, ἵνα περ καὶ
τὸ κράτος τῆς γῆς ἐστὶ τῆς Ἀσσακίης.
Καὶ ἄλλη πόλις Πευκέλα, μεγάλη καὶ
αὕτη, οὐ μακρὰν τῷ Ἰνδῷ. Ταῦτα μὲν
ἔξω τῷ Ἰνδῷ ποταμῷ ὠκισαὶ πρὸς ἐσπέ-
ρην, ἔς τε ἐπὶ τὸν Κωφῆνα.

ΙΙ. Τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τῷ Ἰνδῷ ὡς ἔω, τῆτό
μοι ἔσω ἢ τῶν Ἰνδῶν γῆ, καὶ Ἰνδοὶ ἔτοι
ἔξωσαν. Ὅροι δὲ τῷ Ἰνδῷ γῆς, πρὸς μὲν
Βορέα ἀνέμῳ ὁ Ταῦρος τὸ ὄρος. Καλέεται
δὲ ὁ Ταῦρος ἐπὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ ταύτῃ· ἀλλ' ἀρ-
χεται μὲν ὁ Ταῦρος ἀπὸ θαλάσσης τῆς
κατὰ Παμφύλης τε καὶ Λυκίην, καὶ Κί-
λικας· παρατένει τε ἔς τε τὴν πρὸς ἑὴν
θάλασσαν, τέμνων τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν.
Ἄλλη δὲ ἄλλο καλέεται τὸ ὄρος, τῇ μὲν
Παραπαμιστῶς, τῇ δὲ Ἡμωδῶς, ἄλλη δὲ
Ἡμαον κληίζεται· καὶ τυχὸν ἄλλα καὶ
ἄλλα ἔχει ὀνόματα. Μακεδόνες δὲ οἱ
ἔνι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στρατεύσαντες, Καύκασον
αὐτὸ ἐκάλεον· ἄλλον τῆτον Καύκασον, οὐ

¹ αὐτὴν MSS.

τὸν Σκυθικόν. Ὡς καὶ τὰ ἐπέκεινα τῆς Καυκάστ' λόγον κατέχειν ὅτι ἦλθεν Ἀλεξάνδρος. Τὰ πρὸς ἐσπέρην δὲ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Ἰνδὸς ἀπέρρει, ἕς τε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν, ἵνα περ αὐτὸς κατὰ δύο τόματα ἐκδιδοί, οὐ συνεχέα ἀλλήλοισι τὰ τόματα, κατὰ περ τὰ πέντε τῆς Ἰσθμοῦ ἐστὶ συνεχέα· ἀλλ' ὡς τὰ τῆς Νείλου, ὑπὸ τῶν Δέλτα ποιεῖται τὸ Αἰγυπτίον· ὥδ' ἐπὶ καὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς Δέλτα ποιεῖν ὁ Ἰνδὸς ποταμὸς, οὐ μῖον τῆς Αἰγυπτίου· καὶ τῆτο Πάτταλα τῇ Ἰνδῶν γλώσσει καλεῖται. Τὸ δὲ πρὸς νότου τε ἀνέμω καὶ μεσημβρίας, καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ μεγάλη θάλασσα ἀπέρρει τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν· καὶ τὰ πρὸς ἑὼ αὐτὴ ἡ θάλασσα ἀπέρρει. ²Τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίην, καὶ τὰ Πάτταλά τε καὶ τῆς Ἰνδῆς τὰς ἐκβολὰς, ὥσθ' ὡς πρὸς τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ Μακεδόνων καὶ πολλῶν Ἑλλήνων· τὰ δὲ πρὸς ἑὼ Ἀλεξάνδρος μὲν οὐκ ἐπῆλθε· τὰ δὲ πρὸς ποταμὸν Ἰσθμίου. Ὀλίγοι ὅμως ἀνέγραψαν τὰ μέχρι ποταμοῦ Γάγγεω, καὶ ἵνα τῆς Γάγγεω αἱ ἐκβολαὶ, καὶ πόλις Παλίμθοδρα μεγίστη Ἰνδῶν πρὸς τῷ Γάγγει.

III. Ἐμοὶ δὲ Ἐρατοσθένους ὁ Κυρηναῖος πισυότερος ἄλλω ἔσω, ὅτι τὴν περιόδον περὶ ἔμελλεν Ἐρατοσθένης ἔτος ἀπὸ τῆς ὁρεὸς τῆς Ταύρου, ἵνα τῆς Ἰνδῆς αἱ πηγαί, παρ' αὐτὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ἰόντι ἕς τε ἐπὶ τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν, καὶ τῆς Ἰνδῆς τὰς ἐκβολὰς, μυρίας σαδίας καὶ τριαχιλίας τὴν πλευρὴν λέγει ἐπέχειν τῆς γῆς τῆς Ἰνδῶν. Ταυτησὶ δὲ ἀντίπορον πλευρὴν ποι-

εῖν τὴν ἀπὸ τῆς αὐτῆς ὁρεὸς παρὰ τὴν ἑωὴν θάλασσαν, ἕκτι ταύτῃ τῇ πλευρῇ ἴσην· ἀλλὰ ἄκρην γὰρ ἀνέχειν ἐπὶ μέγα εἶσω εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἕς τριαχιλίας σαδίας μάλιστα ἀνατένυσαν τὴν ἄκρην· εἴη ἂν αὖν αὐτῷ ἡ πλευρὴ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς πρὸς ἑὼ, μυρίας καὶ ἑξακιχίλις σαδίας ἐπέχεσθαι. Τῆτο μὲν αὐτῷ πλάτος τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς συμβαίνει· μήκος δὲ τὸ ἀπὸ ἐσπέρης ἐπὶ ἑὼ, ἕς τε μὲν ἐπὶ πόλιν Παλίμθοδρα, μετρημένον χοίνοισι λέγει ἀναγράφειν (καὶ εἶναι γὰρ ὁδὸν βασιλεῖαν) τῆτο ἐπέχειν ἕς μυρίας σαδίας· τὰ δὲ ἐπέκεινα οὐκέτι ὡσαύτως ἀτρεκέα. Φήμας δὲ ὅσοι ἀνέγραψαν, ἔν τῇ ἄκρῃ τῇ ἀνεχούσῃ εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἕς μυρίας σαδίας μάλιστα ἐπέχειν λέγουσιν· εἶναι δὲ ἄνω τὸ μήκος τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς, σαδίων μάλιστα δις μυρίων. Κτησίης δὲ ὁ Κνίδιος τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν ἴσην τῇ ἄλλῃ Ἀσίῃ λέγει, ἔδ' ἐν λέγων. Οὐδὲ ὁ Ὀησίμριος τρίτην μοῖραν τῆς πάσης Ἀσίας· Νέαρχος δὲ μηνῶν τετάρτων ὁδὸν τὴν δι' αὐτῆς τῆς πεδίας τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς. Μεγασθένης δὲ, τὸ ἀπὸ ἀνατολῶν εἰς ἐσπέρην πλάτος ἐστὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς, ὅ, τε περ οἱ ἄλλοι μήκος ποιεῖσθαι· καὶ λέγει Μεγασθένης, μυρίων καὶ ἑξακιχίλιων σαδίων εἶναι, ἵνα περ τὸ βραχύτατον αὐτῆς. Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ ἄρκτος πρὸς μεσημβρίην (τῆτο δὲ αὐτῷ μήκος γίγνεται) καὶ ἐπέχει τριαχοσίς καὶ διαχιλίας καὶ δις μυρίας, ἵνα περ τὸ στενότερον αὐτῆς. Ποταμοὶ ὅμως τοσοῦτοι εἰσὶν ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ, ὅσοι ἔδ' ἐν τῇ πάσῃ Ἀσίῃ. Μέγιστοι μὲν, ὁ Γάγγης τε καὶ ὁ Ἰνδός, ὅτι καὶ ἡ γῆ ἐπάνωμος· ἄμ-

² Τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίην κατὰ Πάτταλά τε καὶ &c. Schneider.

Φω, τῷ τε Νεῖλῳ τῷ Αἰγυπτίῳ καὶ τῷ Ἰσρῷ τῷ Σκυθικῷ (καὶ εἰ ἐς ταυτὸ συνέλθοι αὐτοῖσι τὸ ὕδωρ) μέζονες. Δοκέειν δὲ ἔμοιγε, καὶ ὁ Ἀκεσίνης μέζων ἐστὶ τῷ τε Ἰσρῷ καὶ τῷ Νεῖλῳ, ἵνα περ παραλαβὼν ἅμα τὸν τε Ὑδάσπεα καὶ τὸν Ὑδραώτεια καὶ τὸν Ὑφασιν, ἐμβάλλει ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν, ὡς καὶ τριάκοντα αὐτῷ σάδια τὸ πλάτος ταύτῃ εἶναι.

IV. Καὶ τυχόν, καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ μέζονες ποταμοὶ ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῷ γῇ ῥέουσιν· ἀλλὰ οὗ μοι ἀτρεκέες, ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπέκεινα Ὑφάσιος ποταμῷ ἰσχυρίσασθαι· ὅτι οὐ πρὸς τῷ Ὑφάσιῳ ἦλθεν Ἀλεξάνδρος. αὐτοῖν δὲ τοῖν μεγίστοις ποταμοῖν, τῷ τε Γάγγει καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ, τὸν Γάγγεα μεγέθει πολὺ τι υπερφέρειν Μεγαδένης ἀνέγραψεν, καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μῆμην τῷ Γάγγει ἔχουσιν. Αὐτὸν τε γὰρ μέγαν ἀνίσχειν ἐκ τῶν πηγῶν, δεχέσθαι τε ἐς αὐτὸν, τὸν τε Καϊνὰν ποταμὸν, καὶ τὸν Ἐρανοδόαν, καὶ τὸν Κοσσάανον, πάντας πλωτῆς· ἐπὶ δὲ Σῶνόν τε ποταμὸν, καὶ Σιτήπεσιν, καὶ Σολόματιν· καὶ τέττας πλωτῆς. Ἐπὶ δὲ Κονδοχάτην τε, καὶ Σάμβον, καὶ Μάγωνα, καὶ Ἀγοράνιν, καὶ Ὠμαλιν. Ἐμβάλλουσιν δὲ ἐς αὐτὸν Κομμενάσης τε μέγας ποταμὸς καὶ Κάκχθις, καὶ Ἀνδώματις ἐξ ἔθνης Ἰνδικῆς τῷ Μανδιαδινῶν ῥέων. Καὶ ἐπὶ τέττασιν, Ἀμυσις παρὰ πόλιν Καλαδέπην, καὶ Ὀξύμαγισ ἐπὶ Παζάλας καλεμένοισι· καὶ Ἐρεννύσις ἐν Μάθαις, ἔθνη Ἰνδικῶν, συμβάλλει τῷ Γάγγει. Τέττων λόγῳ Μεγαδένης³ οὐδένα τῷ Μαι-

άνδρῳ ἀποδόντα, ἵνα περ ναυσίπορος ὁ Μαίανδρος. εἶναι ὦν τὸ εὖρος τῷ Γάγγει, ἔνθα περ αὐτὸς ἐωυτῷ σενώτατος, εἰς ἑκατὸν σάδις. Πολλαχῇ δὲ καὶ λιμένας, ὡς μὴ ἀποπλὸν εἶναι τὴν πέραν χώραν· ἵνα περ χθαμαλή τέ ἐστι, καὶ ἔδαμῃ γηλόφοισιν ἀνεστηκυῖα. Τῷ δὲ Ἰνδῷ ἐς ταυτὸν ἔρχεται Ὑδραώτης μὲν, ἐν Καμβισιόλοις παρεληφώς· τὸν τε Ὑφασιν ἐν Ἀσρύβαις, καὶ τὸν Σαράγην ἐκ Κηνέων, καὶ τὸν Νεῦδρον ἐξ Ἀθιακηνῶν, ἐς Ἀκεσίνην ἐμβάλλει. Ὑδάσπης δὲ ἐν Ὀξυδράκαις, ἄγων ἅμα οἱ τὸν Σίναρον ἐν Ἀρίσπαις, ἐς τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐκδιδόι καὶ οὗτος. Ὁ δὲ Ἀκεσίνης ἐν Μαλλοῖς συμβάλλει τῷ Ἰνδῷ· καὶ Τέταπος δὲ μέγας ποταμὸς ἐς τὸν Ἀκεσίνην ἐκδιδόι. Τέτων ὁ Ἀκεσίνης ἐμπληθεῖς, καὶ τῇ ἐπικλήσει ἐκνικήσας αὐτὸς τῷ ἐωυτῷ ἦδη ὀνόματι, ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν. Κωφὴν δὲ, ἐν Πευκελαίτιδι ἅμα οἱ ἄγων Μαλάμαντὸν τε καὶ Σόασον, καὶ Γαρούαν, ἐκδιδόι ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν. Καθύπερθεν δὲ τέττων, Πάρενος καὶ Σάπαρος, οὐ πολὺ διέχοντες, ἐμβάλλουσιν ἐς τὸν Ἰνδόν. Σόαμος δὲ, ἐκ τῆς ὀρεινῆς τῆς Βεσσαρέων ῥέων, ἔρημος ἄλλῃ ποταμῷ, ἐκδιδόι ἐς αὐτόν. Καὶ τέττων τὰς πολλὰς Μεγαδένης λόγῳ ὅτι πλωτοί εἰσιν. Οὐκ ἐν ἀπισίην χρή ἔχειν, ὑπὲρ τε τῷ Ἰνδῷ καὶ τῷ Γάγγει, μηδὲ συμβλητῆς εἶναι αὐτοῖσι τὸν τε Ἰσρον καὶ τῷ Νεῖλῳ τὸ ὕδωρ. Ἐς μέντοι τὸν Νεῖλον ἑδὲνα ποταμὸν ἐκδιδόντα ἴσμεν, ἀλλ' ἀπ' αὐτοῦ διώρυχας τετμημένας κατὰ τὴν

³ ἑδὲνα εἶναι τῷ. Schmeider.

χώρην τὴν Αἰγυπλίην. Ὁ δὲ γε Ἴσρος, ὀλίγος μὲν ἀνίσχει ἀπὸ τῶν πηγέων· δέχεται δὲ πολλοὺς ποταμοὺς, ἀλλ' οὔτε πλῆθει ἴσως τοῖς Ἰνδῶν ποταμοῖσιν, οἱ ἐς τὸν Ἰνδὸν καὶ τὸν Γάγγην ἐκδιδῶσιν· πλωτὲς δὲ δὴ καὶ κάρτα ὀλίγως, ὧν τὰς μὲν αὐτὸς ἰδὼν οἶδα, τὸν Ἔνον τε, καὶ τὸν Σάον. Ἐνος μὲν ἐν μεθωρίῳ τῆς Νορίκων καὶ Ραιτῶν γῆς μίγνυται τῷ Ἴσρῳ· ὁ δὲ Σάος, κατὰ Πάνονας. Ὁ δὲ χώρος ἵνα περ συμβάλλωσιν οἱ ποταμοὶ, Ταυρῆνος καλεῖται. Ὅσις δὲ καὶ ἄλλον οἶδε ναυσίπορον τῶν ἐς τὸν Ἴσρον ἐκδιδόντων, ἀλλὰ οὐ πολλὰς περ οἶδε.

V. Τὸ δὲ αἴτιον ὅστις ἐθέλει φράζειν τὰ πλεονέκτα τε καὶ μεγέθεα τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποταμῶν, φράζω. Ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ ταῦτα ὡς ἀκοὴ ἀναγεγράφω. Ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλων ποταμῶν ἐνόματα Μεγαθένης ἀνέγραψεν, οἱ ἔξω τῷ Γάγγει τε καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ ἐκδιδῶσιν ἐς τὸν ἑῶν τε καὶ μεσημβρινὸν τὸν ἔξω πόντον. Ὡς τε πάντας ὁκτῶ καὶ πενήκοντα λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰσὶν Ἰνδοὶ ποταμοὶ ναυσίποροι πάντες. Ἀλλ' ἐδὲ Μεγαθένης πολλὴν δοκεῖ μοι ἐπελθεῖν τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρας, πλὴν γε ὅτι πλεῖστα ἢ οἱ ἔνν' Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῷ Φιλίππῳ ἐπελθόντες. Ευγενέσθαι γὰρ Σανδροκότῃ λέγει, τῷ μεγίστῳ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ἰνδῶν καὶ Πόρῳ, ἔτι τὰς μέζονι. Οὗτος ὦν ὁ Μεγαθένης λέγει, ὅτε Ἰνδοὺς ἐπιστρατεύσαι ἑδαμοῖσιν ἀνθρώποις, ὅτε Ἰνδοῖσιν ἄλλας ἀνθρώπους. Ἀλλὰ Σέσωτριν μὲν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον, τῆς Ἀσίας καταστρέφοντα τὴν πολλήν, ἔς τε ἐπὶ τὴν Εὐρώπην σὺν στρατιᾷ ἐλάσαντα, ὅπισθ' ἀπονοστή-

σαι. Ἰάνδυσσον δὲ τὸν Σκύθαι ἐκ Σκυθίας ὁρμηθέντα, παλλὰ μὲν τῆς Ἀσίας ἔθνεα καταστρέφασθαι, ἐπελθεῖν δὲ καὶ τὴν Αἰγυπλίαν γῆν κρατέοντα. Σεμίραμιν δὲ τὴν Ἀσσυρίην ἐπιχειρεῖν μὲν σέλλεσθαι εἰς Ἰνδοὺς, ἀπαθανεῖν δὲ πρὶν τέλος ἐπιθεῖναι τοῖσι βελεύμασιν. Ἀλλὰ Ἀλεξάνδρον γὰρ στρατεύσασθαι ἐπὶ Ἰνδοὺς μὲνον. Καὶ πρὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου, Διονύς περὶ πολλὸς λόγος κατέχει, ὡς καὶ τὰς στρατεύσαντος ἐς Ἰνδοὺς, καὶ καταστρέφοντες Ἰνδοὺς· Ἡρακλῆς δὲ πᾶσι, οὐ πολλός. Διονύς μὲν γε καὶ Νύσσα πόλις μῆμα οὐ φαῦλον τῆς στρατηλασίας, καὶ ὁ Μηρὸς τὸ ὄρος, καὶ ὁ κισσὸς ὅτι ἐν τῷ ὄρει τὰτω φύεται. Καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ὑπὸ τυμπάνων τε καὶ κυμβάλων σελλόμενοι ἐς τὰς μάχας· καὶ ἐδοῖς αὐτοῖσι κατάσικτος ἔσσα, κατάπερ τῷ Διονύσῃ τοῖσι βάκχοισιν· Ἡρακλῆς δὲ οὐ πολλὰ ὑπομνήματα. Ἀλλὰ τὴν Ἀφροδίτην γὰρ πᾶσι, ἥτινα Ἀλεξάνδρος βίη ἐχειρώσατο, ὅτι Ἡρακλῆς οὐ δυνατὸς ἐγένετο ἐξελεῖν, Μακεδονικὸν δοκεῖ μοι τὸ κόμπασμα, κατὰπερ καὶ τὸν Παραπάμισον, Καύκασον ἐκάλεον Μακεδόνες, οὐδὲν τι προσήκοντα τῷ τῷ Καυκάσῳ. Καὶ τὴν καὶ ἄντρον ἐπιφραδέντες ἐν Παραπαμισάδεσι, τοῦτο ἔφρασαν ἐκεῖνο εἶναι τοῦ Προμηθέως τῷ Τιτῆνος τὸ ἄντρον, ἐν ᾧ ἐκρέματο ἐπὶ τῇ κλοπῇ τῷ πυρός. Καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν Σίβαισιν, Ἰνδικῶ γένει, ὅτι δορὰς ἀμπεχομένους εἶδον τὰς Σίβας, ἀπὸ τῆς Ἡρακλῆς στρατηλασίας ἐφάσκον τὰς ὑπολειφθέντας εἶναι τὰς Σίβας. Καὶ γὰρ καὶ σκυτάλην φέρεσσι τε οἱ Σίβαι, καὶ τοῖς

βασιν αὐτῶν ῥόπαλον ἐπικέκαυται· καὶ τῆτο ἐς μνήμην ἀνέφερον τῷ ῥοπάλῳ τῷ Ἡρακλέει. Εἰ δὲ τῷ πεισὰ ταῦτα, ἄλλος ἂν οὗτος Ἡρακλῆς εἴη, ἢ ὁ Θηβαῖος, ἢ ὁ Τύριος οὗτος, ἢ ὁ Αἰγύπτιος, ἢ τις καὶ κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν χώραν οὐ πόρρω τῷ Ἰνδῶν γῆς ὠκισμένην μέγας βασιλεύς.

VI. Ταῦτα μὲν μοι ἐκβολὴ ἔστω τῷ λόγῳ, ἐς τὸ μὴ πεισὰ φάνεσθαι, ὅσα ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπέκεινα τῷ Ἰφάσιος ποταμῷ Ἰνδῶν μετεξέτεροι ἀνέγραψαν· ἐς τε γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰφάσιν, οἱ τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατηλασίας μεταρχόντες, οὐ πάντῃ ἄπιστοι εἰσὶν. Ἐπεὶ καὶ τότε λέγει Μεγαδένης ὑπὲρ ποταμῷ Ἰνδικῷ, Σίλαν μὲν εἶναι οἱ ἔνομα, ῥέειν δὲ ἀπὸ κρήνης ἐπωνύμῃ τῷ ποταμῷ, διὰ τῆς χώρας τῆς Σιλέων, καὶ τέτων ἐπωνύμων τῷ ποταμῷ τε καὶ τῆς κρήνης. Τὸ δὲ ὕδωρ παρέχεσθαι τοιόνδε· ἔδεν εἶναι ὅτῳ ἀντέχει τὸ ὕδωρ, ἔτε τι νήχεσθαι ἐπ' αὐτῷ, ἔτε τι ἐπιπλεῖν, ἀλλὰ πάντα γὰρ ἐς ἀδυσσὸν δύνειν. Οὕτω τοι ἀμειννότερον πάντων εἶναι τὸ ὕδωρ ἐκεῖνο, καὶ ἡεροειδέστερον. Ἦτα δὲ ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ τὸ θέρος, μάλιστα μὲν τὰ ὄρεα Παραπαμισὸς τε καὶ ὁ Ἡμῶδος, καὶ τὸ Ἰμαῖκον ὄρος, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν μεγάλων καὶ θολερῶν οἱ ποταμοὶ ῥέουσιν. Ἦτα δὲ τῷ θέρεος καὶ τὰ πεδία τῶν Ἰνδῶν, ὥς τε λιμνάζειν τὰ πολλὰ αὐτέων. Καὶ ἔφυγεν ἡ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατὴ ἀπὸ τῷ Ἀκασίνῳ ποταμῷ μέσου θέρεος, ὑπερβαλόντος τῷ ὕδατος εἰς τὰ πεδία· ὥς τε ἀπὸ τῶν δὲ ἔξῃ τεκμηριῶσθαι, καὶ τῷ Νείλῳ τὸ

πάθημα τῆτο, ὅτι εἰκότως εἶναι ὕεσθαι τὰ Αἰθιοπῶν ὄρεα τῷ θέρεος· καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνων ἐμπιπλάμενον τὸν Νεῖλον ὑπερβάλλειν ὑπὲρ τὰς ὄχθας ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν Αἰγυπτίην, θολερὸς ὢν. Καὶ ἔτω ῥέει ἐν τῇδε τῇ ὥρῃ, ὥς ἔτε ἂν ἀπὸ χιόνος τηκομένης ἔρρεεν, ἔτε εἰ πρὸς τῶν ὥρῃ θέρεος πνεόντων ἐτησίῳ ἀνέμων ἀνεκόπτετο οἱ τὸ ὕδωρ. Ἦτα δὲ χιονόβια εἴη ἂν τὰ Αἰθιοπῶν ὄρεα ὑπὸ καύματος. Ἦτα δὲ κατὰπερ τὰ Ἰνδῶν, ἢ ἔχω ἐς τὸ εἰκότως. Ἐπεὶ καὶ τὰλλα ἡ Ἰνδῶν γῆ ἢ ἀπέοικε τῆς Αἰθιοπίας· καὶ οἱ ποταμοὶ οἱ Ἰνδοὶ, ὁμοίως τῷ Νείλῳ τῷ Αἰθιοπίῳ τε καὶ Αἰγυπτίῳ, κροκοδείλους τε φέρουσιν, ἔστιν δὲ οἱ αὐτῶν καὶ ἰχθύας, καὶ ἄλλα κήτεα ὅσα ὁ Νεῖλος, πλὴν ἵππων τῷ ποταμῷ. Ὀνησίκριτος δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἵππους τῶν ποταμῶν λέγει ὅτι φέρουσι. Τῶν τε ἀνθρώπων αἱ ἰδέαι οὐ πάντῃ ἀπάδουσιν, αἱ Ἰνδῶν τε καὶ Αἰθιοπῶν. Οἱ μὲν πρὸς νότον ἀνέμῃ Ἰνδοὶ, τοῖς Αἰθιοπῶσι μᾶλλον τι εἰκάσι, μέλανές τε ἰδέσθαι εἰσὶ, καὶ ἡ κόμη αὐτοῖς μέλαινα. Πλὴν γε δὴ ὅτι σιμοὶ ἢ ὡσαύτως, οὐδὲ ἐλόκρανοι ὡς Αἰθιοπες· οἱ δὲ βορείωτεροι τέτων, κατ' Αἰγυπτίους μάλιστα ἂν εἶεν τὰ σώματα.

VII. Ἔθνεα δὲ Ἰνδικὰ εἰκοσι καὶ ἑκατὸν τὰ ἀπαντὰ λέγει Μεγαδένης, δυοῖν δέοντα. Καὶ πολλὰ μὲν εἶναι ἔθνεα Ἰνδικὰ, καὶ αὐτὸς συμφέρομαι Μεγαδένει· τὸ δὲ ἀτρεκές ἢ ἔχω εἰκάσαι ὅπως ἐκ μαθῶν ἀνέγραψεν, ἔδδὲ πολλοσὸν μέρος

* ἰκατόν τι ἄπαντα MSS.

τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς ἐπελθὼν, ἔδὲ ἐπιμίσξης
 πᾶσι τοῖς γένεσιν εὐσεύς ἐς ἀλλήλους.
 πάλαι μὲν δὴ νομάδας εἶναι Ἰνδοὺς, κα-
 τάπερ Σκυθῶν τὰς οὐκ ἀροτῆρας, οἱ ἐπὶ
 τῇσιν ἀμάξῃσι πλανώμενοι, ἄλλοτε ἄλλην
 τῆς Σκυθίας ἀμείβουσιν, ἕτε πόλιας οἰ-
 κέοντες, ἕτε ἱερὰ θεῶν σέβοντες. Οὕτω
 μηδὲ Ἰνδοῖσι πόλιας εἶναι, μηδὲ ἱερὰ
 θεῶν δεδομημένα. Ἀλλ' ἀμπέχεσθαι
 μὲν δορὰς θηρίων ὅσων κατακτάνοιεν
 σιπέεσθαι δὲ τῶν δένδρεων τὸν Φλοιόν·
 καλέεσθαι δὲ τὰ δένδρεα ταῦτα τῇ Ἰνδῶν
 Φωνῇ Τάλα· καὶ Φύεσθαι ἐπ' αὐτῶν,
 κατάπερ τῶν Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇσι κορυ-
 φῇσιν, οἷά περ τολύπας. Σιπέεσθαι δὲ
 καὶ τῶν θηρίων ὅσα ἔλοιεν, ὠμοφαγέ-
 οντας, πρὶν δὴ Διόνυσον ἐλθεῖν ἐς τὴν
 χώραν τῶν Ἰνδῶν. Διόνυσον δὲ ἐλθόντα,
 ὡς καρτερὸς ἐγένετο Ἰνδῶν, πόλιας τε
 οἰκῆσαι, καὶ νόμους θεῖσθαι τῇσι πόλεσιν,
 αἶψα τε δοτῆρα Ἰνδοῖς γενέσθαι, κατάπερ
 Ἑλλήσι. Καὶ σπέρειν διδάξαι τὴν γῆν,
 δίδόντα αὐτὸν σπέρματα· ἢ οὐκ ἐλά-
 σαντος ταύτῃ Τριπτολέμῃ, ὅτι περ ἐκ
 Δήμητρος ἐξάλη σπέρειν τὴν γῆν πᾶσαν·
 ἢ πρὸ Τριπτολέμῃ τις ἕτος Διόνυσος ἐπ-
 ελθὼν τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν, σπέρματα σφίσι
 ἔδωκε καρπῷ τῷ ἡμέρῃ. Βόας τε ὑπ'
 ἀρότρῳ ζεύξαι Διόνυσον πρῶτον, καὶ ἀρο-
 τῆρας ἀντὶ νομάδων ποιῆσαι Ἰνδῶν τὰς
 πολλὰς, καὶ ὀπλίσαι ὅπλοισι τοῖσιν ἀρητί-
 οισι. Καὶ θεὸς σέβειν ὅτι ἐδίδαξε Διό-
 νυσος ἄλλας τε, καὶ μάλιστα δὴ ἑαυτὸν,
 κυμβαλίζοντας καὶ τυμπανίζοντας. Καὶ
 ὄρχησιν δὲ διδάξαι τὴν σατυρικὴν, τὸν
 κόρδακα παρ' Ἑλλήσι καλούμενον. Καὶ

κομᾶν Ἰνδοὺς τῷ θεῷ, μίτρην φορεῖν τε
 ἀναδύξαι, καὶ μύρων ἀλοιφὰς ἐκδιδάξαι.
 Ὡς καὶ εἰς Ἀλεξάνδρον ἔτι ὑπὸ κυμβα-
 λων τε καὶ τυμπάνων ἐς τὰς μάχας Ἰν-
 δοὶ καθίσταντο.

VIII. Ἀπρίοντα δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἰνδῶν γῆς,
 ὡς οἱ ταῦτα κεκοσμέατο, καλαῆσαι βα-
 σιλέα τῆς χώρας Σπατέμβαν τῶν ἐταί-
 ρων ἑνα, τὸν βακχιδέστατον. Τελευτή-
 σαντος δὲ Σπατέμβαν, τὴν βασιλείην ἐκ-
 δεῖξασθαι Βυδύαν τὸν τέταρτον παῖδα. Καὶ
 τὸν μὲν πενήτην καὶ δύο ἕτερα βασι-
 λεῦσαι Ἰνδῶν, τὸν πέμπτον τὸν ἦ παῖδα,
 ἑκοσιν ἕτερα. Καὶ τέταρτον παῖδα ἐκδέξα-
 σθαι τὴν βασιλείην Κραδεύαν. Καὶ τὸ
 ἀπὸ τούτου, τὸ πολὺ μὲν κατὰ γένος ἀμεί-
 βειν τὴν βασιλείην, παῖδα παρὰ πατρός
 ἐκδεχόμενον· εἰ δὲ ἐκλείποι τὸ γένος, ἔτι
 δὴ ἀριστίνδην καθίστασθαι Ἰνδοῖσι βασι-
 λέας. Ἡρακλέα δὲ, ὅντινα ἐς Ἰνδοὺς
 ἀφικέσθαι λόγος κατέκειτο, παρ' αὐτοῖσιν
 Ἰνδοῖσι γηγενέα λέγεσθαι. Ταῦτον τὸν
 Ἡρακλέα μάλιστα πρὸς Σκαρασηνῶν γε-
 γαῖεσθαι, Ἰνδικῷ ἔθνεος. Ἰνα δύο πό-
 λεις μεγάλας, Μέθορά τε καὶ Κλεισό-
 βορα, καὶ ποταμὸς Ἰωδάης πλωτὸς δι-
 ἀρρεῖ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν. Τὴν σκευὴν δὲ
 ἕτος ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ἦντινα ἐφόρει, Μεγα-
 σθένος λέγει ὅτι ὁμοίῃ τῷ Θεβαίῳ Ἡρα-
 κλεῖ, ὡς αὐτοὶ Ἰνδοὶ ἀπηγγέοντα. Καὶ
 τέτῳ ἄρσενος μὲν παῖδας πολλὰς κάρτα
 γενέσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ (πολλῇσι γὰρ
 δὴ γυναῖξιν ἐς γάμον ἐλθεῖν καὶ τέτον
 τὸν Ἡρακλέα) θυγατέρα δὲ μενογενέην.
 Οὖνομα δὲ τῇ παιδί Πανδάην. Καὶ τὴν
 χώραν ἵνα τε ἐγγένητο, καὶ ἥστινος ἐπέτρεψεν

αὐτὴν ἄρχεν Ἡρακλῆς, Πανδαίην, τῆς παιδὸς ἐπώνυμον. Καὶ ταύτῃ ἐλέφαντας μὲν γενέσθαι ἐκ τῆ πατρὸς ἐς πεντακοσίας, ἵππων δὲ ἐς τετρακισχιλίην· πεζῶν δὲ, ἐς τὰς τρεῖς καὶ δέκα μυριάδας. Καὶ τὰδε μετεξέτεροι Ἰνδῶν περὶ Ἡρακλέους λέγουσιν. Ἐπελθόντα αὐτὸν πάσαν γῆν καὶ θάλασσαν, καὶ καθάραντα ὅ, τι περ κακόν, κίναδος ἐξευρεῖν ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ κόσμον γυναικῆιον· ὄντινα καὶ εἰς τῷτο ἔτι οἱ τε ἐξ Ἰνδῶν τῆς χώρας τὰ ἀγώγιμα παρ' ἡμέας ἀγινέοντες σπαδῇ ὠνεόμενοι ἐκκομίζουσι· καὶ Ἑλλήνων δὲ πάλαι καὶ Ῥωμαίων νῦν ὅσοι πολυκτέανοι καὶ εὐδαίμονες, μεζῶσι σπαδῇ ὠνεύονται τὸν μαργαρίτην δὴ τὸν θαλάσσιον, ἔτω τῇ Ἰνδῶν γλώσῃ καλούμενον. Τὸν γὰρ Ἡρακλέα, ὡς καλόν οἱ ἐφάνη τὸ Φόρημα, ἐκ πάσης τῆς θαλάσσης ἐς τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν συναγινέειν τὸν μαργαρίτην δὴ τῷτον, τῇ θυγατρὶ τῇ ἐωὐτῆ εἶναι κόσμον. Καὶ λέγει Μεγαοθένης, θηρεύοντα τὴν κόγχην αὐτῆ δικτύοις, νέμεσθαι δὲ ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ κατ' αὐτὸ πολλὰς κόγχας, καθάπερ τὰς μελίσσας. Καὶ εἶναι γὰρ καὶ τοῖσι μαργαρίτησι βασιλέα, ἢ βασίλισσαν, ὡς τῇσι μελισσῇσι. Καὶ ὅστις μὲν ἐκείνους κατ' ἐπιτυχίην συλλάβοι, τῷτον δὲ εὐπετέως περιβάλλειν καὶ τὸ ἄλλο σμήνος τῶν μαργαριτῶν· εἰ δὲ διαφύγοι σφᾶς ὁ βασιλεὺς, τῷτω δὲ ἔκκετι θηρατὲς εἶναι τοὺς ἄλλους· τοὺς ἀλόγους δὲ περιορᾶν κατασαπῆναι σφίσι τὴν σάρκα, τῷ δὲ ὅσῳ ἐς κόσμον χρῆσθαι. Καὶ εἶναι γὰρ καὶ παρ' Ἰνδοῖσι τὸν μαργαρίτην τριτάσιον κατὰ τιμὴν πρὸς

χρυσίον τὸ ἀπεφθον, καὶ τῷτο ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ ὀρυσσόμενον.

ΙΧ. Ἐν δὲ τῇ χώρῃ ταύτῃ, ἵνα ἐβασίλευσεν ἡ θυγάτηρ τῆ Ἡρακλέους, τὰς μὲν γυναῖκας ἐπιατέας ἐέσας, ἐς ὥρην γάμῳ ἰέναι, τὰς δὲ ἀνδρας τεσσαράκοντα ἔτεα τὰ πλεῖστα βιώσκεισθαι. Καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς λεγόμενον λόγον εἶναι παρ' Ἰνδοῖσιν Ἡρακλέα, ὁψιγόνος οἱ γενομένης τῆ παιδός, ἐπεὶ τε δὴ ἐγγυὺς ἔμαθεν ἑαυτῷ ἐέσαν τὴν τελευταίην, ἐκ ἔχοντα ὅτῳ ἀνδρὶ ἐκδῶ τὴν παῖδα ἐωὐτῆ ἐπαξίῳ, αὐτὸν μιγῆναι τῇ παιδί ἐπιατέῃ ἐέση, ὡς γένος ἐξ οὗ τε κακάνης ὑπολείπεσθαι Ἰνδῶν βασιλέας. Ποιῆσαι ἄν αὐτὴν Ἡρακλέα ὠρέαν γάμῳ καὶ ἐκ τῶδε ἅπαν τὸ γένος ταῦτο ὅτις ἡ Πανδάη ἐπῆρξε, ταῦτο τῷτο γέρας ἔχεν· παρὰ Ἡρακλέους. Ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκεῖ, ἔπερ ὦν τὰ ἐς τοσόνδε ἄτοπα Ἡρακλέης οἷός τε ἦν ἐξεργάζεσθαι, καὶ αὐτὸν ἀποφῆναι μακροβιώτερον, ὡς ὠρέαν μιγῆναι τῇ παιδί. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἰ ταῦτα ὑπὲρ τῆς ὥρης τῶν ταυτῇ παίδων ἀτρεκέα ἐσίν, ἐς ταυτὸν φέρειν δοκεῖ ἔμοιγε ἐς ὅ, τι περ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τῆ ἡλικίης ὅτις τεσσαράκοντῆτες ἀποθνήσκουσιν οἱ πρεσβύτατοι αὐτῶν. Οἷς γὰρ τό τε γῆρας τοσῶδε ταχύτερον ἐπέρχεται, καὶ ὁ θάνατος ὁμῶ τῷ γῆρα, πάντως πᾶ καὶ ἡ ἀκμὴ πρὸς λόγον τῆ τέλους ταχυτέρῃ ἐπανθίει. Ὡς τε τριακοντέτες μὲν ὁμογέροντες ἄν πᾶ εἶεν αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ἄνδρες· ἑκοσι δὲ ἔτεα γερονότες, οἱ ἔξω ἥβης νεανίσκοι. Ἡ δὲ ἀκροτάτῃ ἥβῃ, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντεκάδεκα ἔτεα. Καὶ τῇσι γυναῖξιν ὥρῃ τῆ γάμῳ κατὰ λόγον ἂν ἔτω ἐς τὰ

ἐπὶ τὰ ἔτερα συμβαίνει. Καὶ γὰρ τὰς καρ-
πὺς ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρῃ πεπαυμέναι τε
ταχύτερον τῆς ἄλλης, αὐτὸς ἔτος Μεγα-
σθένης ἀνέγραψε, καὶ φθίνειν ταχύτερον.
Ἀπὸ μὲν δὴ Διονύσου βασιλέως ἡρίθμεον
Ἰνδοὶ ἐς Σανδροκότιαν, τρεῖς καὶ πενήκοντα
καὶ ἑκατὸν ἔτερα δὲ, δύο καὶ τεσσαρά-
κοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλια. Ἐν δὲ τέτοις
τρὶς τὸ πᾶν εἰς ἐλευθερίην * τὴν δὲ, καὶ
ἐς τριακίσια· τὴν δὲ, ἑκοσὶ τε ἑτέων καὶ
ἑκατόν. Πρεσβύτερον τε Διονύσον Ἡρα-
κλῆς δέκα καὶ πέντε γενεῇσιν Ἰνδοὶ λέ-
γουσιν. Ἄλλον δὲ ἑδὲνα ἐμβαλεῖν ἐς γῆν
τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ· ἑδὲ Κῦρον τὸν
Καμβύσῳ, καίτοι ἐπὶ Σκύθας ἐλά-
σαντα, καὶ τὰλλα πολυπραγμονέσασθαι
δὴ τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίην βασιλέων γενό-
μενον τὸν Κῦρον. Ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρον γὰρ
ἐλθεῖν τε καὶ κρατῆσαι πάντων τοῖς ὅπλοις,
ὅσας γε δὴ ἐπῆλθε· καὶ ἂν καὶ πάντων
κρατῆσαι, εἰ ἡ στρατὴ ἤθελεν. Οὐ μὲν
δὲ ἑδὲ Ἰνδῶν τίνα ἔξω τῆς οἰκίας σαλῆ-
ναι ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, διὰ δικαιοσύνην.

Χ. Λέγουσι γὰρ καὶ τὰδε, μνημεῖα ὅτι Ἰν-
δοὶ τοῖς τελευτήσασιν οὐ ποιεῖσιν, ἀλλὰ
τὰς ἀρετὰς γὰρ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐς μνήμην τί-
θενται τοῖσιν ἀποθανόνσι, καὶ τὰς ὁδὰς αἱ
αὐτοῖσιν ἐπάδονται. Πόλεων δὲ καὶ ἀριθ-
μὸν ἐκ εἶναι ἂν ἀτρεκέως ἀναγράφαι τῶν
Ἰνδικῶν, ὑπὸ πλήθους. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὅσα
παραποτάμια αὐτέων, ἢ παραθαλάσ-
σια, ταύτας μὲν ξυλίνας ποιεῖσθαι· οὐ
γὰρ εἶναι ἐκ πλίνθων ποιεόμενας διαρκέσαι
ἐπὶ χρόνον, τὰ τε ὕδατος ἕνεκα τὰ ἐξ οὐ-
ρανῶ, καὶ ὅτι οἱ ποταμοὶ αὐτοῖσιν ὑπερ-
βάλλοντες ὑπὲρ τὰς ὄχθας, ἐμπίπλῃσι

τὰ ὕδατος τὰ πεδία. Ὅσα δὲ ἐν ὑπερ-
δεξίοις τε καὶ μετεώροις τόποις, καὶ τὰ
τοῖσιν ὑψηλοῖσιν, ὠκισμέναι εἰσὶ, ταύ-
τας δὲ ἐκ πλίνθων τε καὶ πηλῶ ποιεῖ-
σθαι. Μεγίστην δὲ πόλιν Ἰνδοῖσιν εἶναι
Παλίμβοθρα καλεομένην, ἐν τῇ Πρασίων
γῇ, ἵνα αἱ συμβολαὶ εἰσὶ τὰ τε Ἐρανο-
βόα ποταμῶ καὶ τῇ Γάργεω· τὰ μὲν Γάρ-
γεω, τὰ μεγίστη ποταμῶν· ὁ δὲ Ἐρανο-
βόας, τρίτος μὲν ἂν ᾖ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ποτα-
μῶν, μέγαν δὲ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ οὗτος· ἀλλὰ
ξυγχωρεῖ αὐτὸς τῷ Γάργῃ, ἐπειδὴν ἐμ-
βάλῃ ἐς αὐτὸν τὸ ὕδωρ. Καὶ λέγει Με-
γασθένης, μήκος μὲν ἐπέχειν τὴν πόλιν
καθ' ἑκατέρην τὴν πλευρὴν, ἵνα περ μα-
κροτάτη αὐτὴ ἐαυτῆς ὠκισαί, ἐς ὀγδοή-
κοντα σταδίους· τὸ δὲ πλάτος, ἐς πεντε-
καίδεκα. Τάφρον γὰρ περιβεβλησθαι τῇ
πόλει, τὸ εὖρος ἑξάπλευθρον, τὸ δὲ βά-
θος, τριήκοντα πηχέων. Πύργους δὲ ἐβ-
δομήκοντα καὶ πεντακοσίους ἐπέχειν τὸ
τείχος, καὶ πύλας τέσσαρας καὶ ἐξήκοντα.
Εἶναι δὲ καὶ τότε μέγα ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ,
πάντας Ἰνδοὺς εἶναι ἐλευθέρους, ἑδὲ τίνα
δούλον εἶναι Ἰνδοῦ. Τῆτο μὲν Λακεδαι-
μονίοισιν ἐς ταυτὸ συμβαίνει καὶ Ἰνδοῖσιν.
Λακεδαιμονίοις μὲν γε οἱ εἰλωτες δούλοι
εἰσιν, καὶ τὰ δέλων ἐργάζονται· Ἰνδοῖσι γὰρ,
ἑδὲ ἄλλος δούλος ἐστὶ, μήτοιγε Ἰνδῶν τις.

ΧΙ. Νενέμνηται γὰρ οἱ πάντες Ἰνδοὶ ἐς
ἐπὶ τὰ μάλιστα γενεάς. Ἐν μὲν αὐτοῖσιν
οἱ σοφισταὶ εἰσιν, πλήθει μὲν μέγας τῶν
ἄλλων, δόξῃ δὲ καὶ τιμῇ γεραρότατοι.
Οὔτε γὰρ τι τῷ σώματι ἐργάζεσθαι
ἀναγκαῖον σφὶν προσκείμεται· οὔτε τι
ἀποφέρειν ἀφ' ὅτε πονέουσιν ἐς τὸ και-

νόν· ἔδδ' τι ἄλλο ἀνάγκης ἀπλῶς ἐπείναι τοῖσι σοφισῆσιν, ὅτι μὴ θύειν τὰς θυσίας τοῖσι θεοῖσιν ὑπὲρ τῆ κοινῆ τῶν Ἰνδῶν. Καὶ ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ θύει, ἐξηγητὴς αὐτῷ τῆ θυσίης τῶν τις σοφιστῶν τέτων γίνεται, ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως κεχαρισμένα τοῖς θεοῖς θύσαντας. Εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ μαντικῆς οὗτοι μῆνοι Ἰνδῶν δαήμονες, ἔδδ' ἐφῆται ἄλλω μαντεύεσθαι, ὅτι μὴ σοφῶ ἀνδρί. Μαντεύουσι δὲ ὅσα ὑπὲρ τῶν ὥρων τῆ ἔτεος, καὶ εἴ τις ἐς τὸ κοινὸν συμφορὴν καταλαμβάνει· τὰ ἴδια δὲ ἐκάστοισιν οὐ σφιν μέλει μαντεύεσθαι· ἢ ὡς ἐκ ἐξικνεομένης τῆς μαντικῆς ἐς τὰ μικρότερα, ἢ ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον ἐπὶ τέτοισι πονέεσθαι. Ὅστις δὲ ἀμάρτοι ἐς τρεῖς μαντευσάμενος, τέτρω ἢ ἄλλο μὲν κακὸν γίγνεσθαι ἔδδεν, σιωπᾶν δὲ εἶναι ἐπ' ἀναγκῆς τῆ λοιπῆ· καὶ ἐκ ἑστίν ὅστις ἐξαναγκάσει τὸν ἄνδρα τέτον φωνῆσαι, ὅτε ἡ σιωπὴ κατακέκριται. Οὗτοι γυμνοὶ διαπῶνται οἱ σοφισταί, τῆ μὲν χιμῶνος ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ, τῆ δὲ θέρους ἐπὶ ἡλίου κατέχρη, ἐν τοῖσι λεμῶσι καὶ τοῖσιν ἔλουσιν ὑπὸ δένδρεσι μαγάλουσιν· ὦν τὴν σκιὴν Νέαρχος λέγει ἐς πέντε πλεῖθρα ἐν κύκλῳ ἐξικνεῖσθαι, καὶ ἂν μυρίους ἀνθρώπους ὑπὸ ἐνὶ δένδρεϊ σκιάζεσθαι· τηλικαῦτα εἶναι ταῦτα τὰ δένδρεα. Σιτέονται δὲ ὠραῖα, καὶ τὸ φλοῖον τῶν δένδρων, γλυκύν τε ὄντα καὶ τρώφιμον, ἥπερ αἱ βάλαροι τῶν φοινίκων. Δεύτεροι δ' ἐπὶ τέτοισιν οἱ γεωργοὶ εἰσιν· ἔτοι πλῆθει πλεῖστοι Ἰνδῶν εἶντες. Καὶ τέτοισιν ἔτε ὅπλα ἐστὶν ἀρήϊα, ἔτε μέλει τὰ πολέμια ἔργα, ἀλλὰ τὴν χώραν οὗτοι ἐργάζονται· καὶ τοὺς φόρους τοῖς τε βα-

σιλεῦσι καὶ τῆσι πόλεσιν ὅσαι αὐτόνομοι, ἔτοι ἀποφέρουσι. Καὶ εἰ πόλεμος ἐς ἀλλήλους τοῖσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν τύχαι, τῶν ἐργαζομένων τὴν γῆν οὐ θέμις σφιν ἀπλεῖσθαι, ἔδδ' αὐτὴν τὴν γῆν τέμνειν· ἀλλὰ οἱ μὲν πολεμῶσι καὶ κατακαίνουσιν ἀλλήλους ὅπως τύχοιεν· οἱ ἢ πλεῖστον αὐτῶν κατ' ἡσυχίαν ἀρῶσιν, ἢ τρυγῶσιν ἢ κλαδῶσιν, ἢ θεριζουσιν. Τρίτοι δὲ εἰσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν οἱ νομέες, οἱ ποιμένες τε καὶ βεκόλοι, καὶ οὗτοι ἔτε κατὰ πόλιας, ἔτε ἐν τῆσι κώμησιν οἰκέουσι· νομάδες τέ εἰσι, καὶ ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρεα βιοτεύουσι. Φόρον δὲ καὶ ἔτοι ἀπὸ τῶν κτηνῶν ἀποφέρουσι· καὶ θηρεύουσιν· οὗτοι ἀνὰ τὴν χώραν ὄρνιθας τε καὶ ἄγρια θηρία.

ΧΙΙ. Τέταρτον δὲ εἰς τὸ δημηουργικὸν τε καὶ καπηλικὸν γένος. Καὶ οὗτοι λειτηργοὶ εἰσι, καὶ φόρον ἀποφέρουσιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἔργων τῶν σφετέρων, πλὴν γε δὴ ἄσαι τὰ ἀρήϊα ὅπλα ποιέουσιν, οὗτοι ἢ καὶ μισθὸν ἐκ τῆ κοινῆ προσλαμβάνουσιν. Ἐν δὲ τέτρω τῷ γένει οἱ τε ναυπηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ναυτὰς εἰσιν ὅσοι κατὰ τοὺς ποταμούς πλώουσι. Πέμπτον δὲ γένος ἐστὶν Ἰνδοῖσιν, οἱ πολεμισταί· πλεῖστοι μὲν δεύτερον μετὰ τὰς γεωργίας, πλεῖστη δὲ ἐλευθερίῃ τε καὶ εὐθυμίᾳ ἐπιχρεόμενοι· καὶ οὗτοι ἀσκητὰς μόνων τῶν πολεμικῶν ἔργων εἰσὶ. Τὰ δὲ ὅπλα ἄλλοι αὐτοῖς ποιέουσι, καὶ ἵππους ἄλλοι παρέχουσι· καὶ διακονοῦσιν ἐπὶ στρατοπέδῳ ἄλλοι, οἱ τὰς τε ἵππους αὐτοῖς θεραπεύουσι, καὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἐκκαθαίρουσι, καὶ τὰς ἐλέφαντας ἄγουσι, καὶ τὰ ἄρματα κοσμέουσι τε καὶ ἡνιοχεύουσιν. Αὐτοὶ ἢ, ἔς τ' ἂν μὲν πολεμῶν δᾶ, πολεμῶ-

σιν· εἰρήνης δὲ γενομένης, ³ εὐθυμέεσσι. Καὶ σφιν μισθὸς ἐκ τῆ κοινῆ τοσούτῃ ἐρχεται, ὡς καὶ ἄλλες τρέφειν ἀπ' αὐτῶν εὐμαρέως. Ἐκτοὶ δὲ εἰσιν Ἰνδοῖσιν, οἱ ἐπίσκοποι καλεόμενοι. Οὗτοι ἐφορῶσι τὰ γινόμενα κατὰ τε τὴν χώραν, καὶ κατὰ τὰς πόλεις· καὶ ταῦτα ἀναγγέλλουσιν τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἵνα περ βασιλεύοντα Ἰνδοί· ἢ τοῖς τέλεσιν, ἵνα περ αὐτόνομοι εἰσὶ. Καὶ τέτοις οὐ θέμις ψεῦδος ἀναγγέλλαι ἔδεν, ἔδὲ τις Ἰνδῶν αἰτίην ἔαχε ψεύσασθαι. Ἐβδόμοι δὲ εἰσιν, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῶν κοινῶν βαλλούμενοι ὁμῇ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἢ κατὰ πόλεις ὅσαι αὐτόνομοι, σὺν τῇσιν ἀρχῇσι. Πλήθει μὲν ὀλίγον τὸ γένος τῆτό ἐστι, σοφίῃ δὲ καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ, ἐκ πάντων προκεκριμένον. Ἐνθεν οἱ τε ἀρχόντες αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιλέγονται, καὶ ὅσοι νομάρχαι καὶ ὑπαρχοὶ, καὶ θησαυροφύλακες τε καὶ στρατοφύλακες, ναυάρχαι τε καὶ ταμίαι, καὶ τῶν κατὰ γεωργίην ἔργων ἐπιστάται. Γαμέειν δὲ ἐξ ἑτέρου γένεος, οὐ θέμις· οἷον τοῖσι γεωργοῖσιν ἐκ τῆ δημιουργικῆς, ἢ ἔμπαλιν· ἔδὲ δύο τέχναις ἐπιτηδεύειν τὸν αὐτὸν, ἔδὲ τῆτο θέμις. Οὐδὲ ἀμείβειν ἐξ ἑτέρου γένεος εἰς ἕτερον· οἷον, γεωργικὸν ἐκ νομέως γενέσθαι, ἢ νομέα ἐκ δημιουργικῆς. Μῆνον σφίσιν ἀνέεται, σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γενέσθαι· ὅτι οὐ μαλθακὰ τοῖσι σοφιστῇσιν εἰσὶ τὰ πρήγματ' αἰ, ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωροτάτ' αἰ.

XIII. Θηρῶσι δὲ Ἰνδοὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἄγρια θηρία, κατὰ περ καὶ Ἕλληνες. Ἡ δὲ τῶν ἐλεφάντων σφιν θήρα ἔδεν τι ἄλλη

ἔοικεν· ὅτι καὶ ταῦτα τὰ θηρία ἔδαμοῖσιν ἄλλοισι θηρίοις ἐπέοικεν. Ἀλλὰ τόπον γὰρ ἐπιλεξάμενοι ἀπέδον, καὶ καυματοῦδεα, ἐν κύκλῳ τάφρον ὀρύσσασιν, ὅσον μεγάλῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἐπαυλίσασθαι· τῆς δὲ τάφρου τὸ εὖρος ἐς πέντε ὀργυίας ποιεῖνται, βάθος τε ἐς τέσσαρας. Τὸν δὲ χῆν ὅτινα ἐκβάλλουσιν ἐκ τῆ ὀρύγματος, ἐπὶ τὰ χεῖλα ἐκάτερα τῆ τάφρου ἐπιφορῇσαντες, ἀντὶ τέχεος διαχρῆνται. Αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ χώματι τῆ ἐπιχειλέος τῆ ἔξω τῆς τάφρου, σκηνάς σφιν ὀρυκτὰς ποιεῖνται, καὶ διὰ τετῶν ὁπᾶς ὑπολαμβάνονται· δι' ὧν φῶς τε αὐτοῖς συνεσέρχεται, καὶ τὰ θηρία προσάγοντα, καὶ ἐσελεύοντα ἐς τὸ ἔρκος σκέπτονται, ἐνταῦθα ἐντὸς τῆ ἔρκους καταστήσαντες τῶν θηλέων τρεῖς ἢ τέσσαρας, ὅσαι μάλιστα τὸν θυμὸν χειρότεες, μίαν εἰσοδὸν ἀπολιμπάνουσιν κατὰ τὴν τάφρον, γεφυρώσαντες τὴν τάφρον· καὶ ταύτῃ χαῖν τε καὶ πῶαν πολλὴν ἐπιφέρουσιν, τῶ μὴ ἀρίστων εἶναι τοῖσι θηρίοις τὴν γεφυραν, μή τινα δόλον οἶσθῶσι. Αὐτοὶ μὲν οὖν ἐκπαδὼν σφῶς ⁴ ἐῴσι κατὰ τῶν σκηνῶν τῶν ὑπὸ τῇ τάφρῳ δεδυκότες. Οἱ γὰρ ἄγριοι ἐλέφαντες ἡμέρης μὲν οὐ πελάζουσιν τοῖσιν οἰκισμένοις, νύκτωρ δὲ πλανῶνται τε πάντα, καὶ ἀγγελιδὸν νέμονται, τῷ μεγίστῳ καὶ γεννασιότατ' σφῶν ἐπόμενοι, κατὰ περ αἱ βόες τοῖσι ταύροιςιν, εἰαν ὧν τῷ ἔρκῳ πελάσωσι, τὴν τε Φωγὴν ἀκρόκτες τῶν θηλέων, καὶ τῇ ὁδμῇ αἰσθανόμενοι, ἀρόμῳ ἵενται ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν χῶ

³ εὐθυμέεσσι MSS.

⁴ ἔχουσι Schmeider.

ρον τ' πεφραγμένον, ἐκπεριελθόντες ἢ τῆς τάφρου τὰ χεῖλεα, εὐτ' ἂν τῇ γεφύρῃ ἐπιτύχωσι, κατὰ ταύτην ὡς τὸ ἔρκος ἀθρόονται. Οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι αἰδούμενοι τὴν ἔσοδον τῇ ἐλεφάντων τῶν ἀγρίων, οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν τὴν γεφυραν ὀξέως ἀφῆλόν, οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς πέλας κόμας ἐπιδραμόντες, ἀγγέλλουσι τὰς ἐλεφάντας ὅτι ἐν τῷ ἔρκει ἔχονται. Οἱ δὲ ἀκούσαντες ἐπιβάνουσι τῶν κρατίσων τε τὸν θυμὸν καὶ τῶν χειροθεσάτων ἐλεφάντων. Ἐπιβάντες δὲ, ἐλαύνουσιν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ ἔρκος· ἐλάσαντες ἢ, ἐκ αὐτίκα μάχης ἀπλονται· ἀλλ' εἴωσι γὰρ λιμῷ ταλαιπωρεῖσθαι τὰς ἀγρίους ἐλεφάντας, καὶ ὑπὸ τῷ δίψῃ δαλωθῆναι· εὐτ' ἂν δὲ σφίσι κακῶς ἔχῃν δοκέωσι, τῆνικαῦτα ἐπισήσαντες αὖθις τὴν γεφυραν, ἐλαύνουσιν τε ὡς ἐς τὸ ἔρκος. Καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα μάχῃ ἴσεται κρατερὴ τοῖσιν ἡμέροισι τῇ ἐλεφάντων πρὸς τὰς ἐαλωκότας. Ἐπεὶτα κρατέονται μὲν κατὰ τὸ εἶκος οἱ ἄγριοι, ὑπὸ τε τῇ ἀθυμίῃ καὶ τῷ λιμῷ ταλαιπωρούμενοι. Οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τῇ ἐλεφάντων καλαβάντες, παρεμείνοισιν ἤδη τοῖς τ' ἀγρίοις τὰς πόδας ἄκρας συνδέουσιν. Ἐπεὶτα ἐγκελεύονται τοῖσιν ἡμέροισι πωληγαῖς σφᾶς καλᾶζειν πολλαῖς, ἔς τ' ἂν ἐκείνοι ταλαιπωρούμενοι ἐς γῆν πέσωσι. Παραστάντες δὲ, βρόχους περιβάλλουσιν αὐτοῖσι κατὰ τὰς αὐχένας, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπιβάντες καίμενοι. Τὰ δὲ μὴ ἀποσείεσθαι τὰς ἀμβάτας, μηδὲ τι ἄλλο ἀτάσθαλον ἐργάζεσθαι, τὸν τράχηλον αὐτοῖσιν, ἐν κύκλῳ, μαχαίρῳ ὀξῇ ἐπιτέμνεσι, καὶ τὸν βρόχον κατὰ τὴν τομὴν περιδέουσιν, ὡς ἀτρέμα ἔχῃν τὴν κε-

φαλὴν τε καὶ τὸν τράχηλον ὑπὸ τῷ ἔλκεος. Εἰ γὰρ περιστρέφοντο ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας, τρίβεται αὐτοῖσι τὸ ἔλκος ὑπὸ τῷ κάλῳ. Οὕτω μὲν ἀτρέμα ἔχουσι. Καὶ αὐτοὶ γνωστιμαχέοντες ἤδη, ἄγονται κατὰ τὸν δασμὸν πρὸς τῶν ἡμέρων.

XIV. Ὅσοι δὲ νῆπιοι αὐτῶν, ἢ διὰ κακότητα οὐκ ἄξιοι ἐκτῆσθαι, τέτῃς εἴῃσιν ἀπαλλάττεσθαι ἐς τὰ σφέτερα ἤθεα. Ἀγοντες δὲ εἰς τὰς κόμας τὰς ἀλόνιας, τὰ τε χλωρὰ καλάμῃ καὶ τῆς πόας τὰ πρῶτα ἐμφαγεῖν ἔδοσαν· οἱ ἢ ὑπὸ ἀθυμίας, οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν ἐδὲν σιτέεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ περιϊτάμενοι οἱ Ἰνδοὶ, ὠδαῖσί τε καὶ τυμπάνοις, καὶ κυμβαλίοις ἐν κύκλῳ κρέοντες τε καὶ ἐπάδοντες, κατευνάζουσι. Θυμώσοφον γὰρ, ἑπὲρ τι ἄλλο θηρίον, ὁ ἐλεφας. Καὶ τινες ἤδη αὐτῶν τὰς ἀμβάτας σφῶν, ἐν πολέμῳ ἀποθανόντας, ἄραντες αὐτοὶ ἐξήνεγκαν ἐς ταφὴν· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπερήσπισαν καίμενας· οἱ δὲ καὶ πεσόντων προεκινδύνευσαν. Ὁ δὲ τις πρὸς ὀργὴν ἀποκλείνας τὴν ἀμβάτην, ὑπὸ μετανοίᾃς τε καὶ ἀθυμίας ἀπέθανεν. Εἶδον ἢ ἔγωγε καὶ κυμβαλίζοντα ἤδη ἐλεφάντα, καὶ ἄλλους ὀρχεομένους, κυμβαλοῖν τῷ κυμβαλίζοντι πρὸς τοῖν σκελοῖν τοῖν ἔμπροσθεν προσηρημένοι, καὶ πρὸς τῇ προσκοκίδι καλεομένη ἄλλο κύμβαλον. Ὁ δὲ ἐν μέρει τῇ προσκοκίδι ἔκρεε τὸ κύμβαλον καὶ ρυθμῷ πρὸς ἑκατέρω τῶν σκελοῖν· οἱ δὲ ὀρχεομένοι ἐν κύκλῳ τε ἐχόρευον, καὶ ἐπαίροντες τε καὶ ἐπικάμπτοντες τὰ ἔμπροσθεν σκέλεα ἐν τῷ μέρει, ἐν ρυθμῷ καὶ ὅτοι ἔβαινον, καθότι ὁ κυμβαλίζων σφίσις ὑψηλέστο. Βάλλεται

δὲ ἐλέφας ἥρος ὥρη, κατάπερ βῆς ἢ ἵππος, ἐπεὶ τῇσι θηλέσιν αἱ παρὰ τοῖσι κροτάφοισιν ἀναπνοαὶ ἀνοιχθεῖσαι ἐκπνέωσι. Κύνες δὲ τὰς ἐλαχίστας μὲν, ἐκκαίδεκα μῆνας· τὰς πλείους δὲ, ὀκτωκαίδεκα. Τίκτην δὲ ἐν, κατάπερ ἵππος· καὶ τῆτο ἐκτρέφει τῷ γάλακτι, ἐς ἔτος ὄγδοον. Ζῶσι δὲ ἐλεφάντων οἱ πλείους ἔτη ζῶντες, ἐς διηκόσια· πολλοὶ δὲ νόσῳ προτελευτῶσιν. Γῆρα δὲ ἐς τόσον ἔρχονται. Καὶ ἐσιν αὐτοῖσι τὸ μὲν ὀφθαλμῶν ἵαμα, τὸ βόειον γάλα ἐγχέμενον· πρὸς δὲ τὰς ἄλλας νόσους, ὁ μέλας οἶνος πινόμενος. Ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖσιν ἔλκεσι, τὰ ὕεα κρέα ὀπτώμενα καὶ καταπασσόμενα. Ταῦτα παρ' Ἰνδοῖσιν ἐσιν αὐτοῖσιν ἰάματα.

XV. Τὰ δὲ ἐλέφαντος τὸ τίγριν πολὺντι ἀλκιμώτερον Ἰνδοὶ ἄγασιν. Τίγριος δὲ δορὴν μὲν ἰδεῖν λέγει Νέαρχος, αὐτὸν δὲ τίγριν ἐκ ἰδεῖν. Ἀλλὰ τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς γὰρ ἀπηγεῖσθαι, τίγριν εἶναι μέγεθος μὲν ἡλίκον τὸ μέγιστον ἵππον· τὴν δὲ ἀκύντηλα καὶ ἀλκὴν, ἔδεν· ἄλλω εἰκάσαι. Τίγριν γὰρ ἐπεὶ ὁμῶς ἔλθῃ ἐλέφαντι, ἐπιπηδᾷ τε ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν τῷ ἐλέφαντι, καὶ ἄγχειν εὐπετέως. Ταύτας δὲ ἄστιναι καὶ ἡμῶς ὀρέομεν καὶ τίγριαι καλούμεν, θώας εἶναι αἰόλας καὶ μέζοντας ἥπερ τὰς ἄλλας θώας. Ἐπεὶ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρμηκῶν λέγει Νέαρχος, μύρμηκα μὲν αὐτὸς ἐκ ἰδεῖν ὅποιον δὴ τινα μελεξέτεροι διεγράψαν γίνεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ· δορὰς δὲ καὶ τούτων ἰδεῖν πολλὰς, ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον κατακομιθεῖσας τὸ Μακεδονικόν. Μεγαδένης δὲ καὶ ἀτρεκέα εἶναι ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρ-

μηκῶν τὸ λόγον ἰσορῶει, τάς τε εἶναι τὰς τὸ χρυσὸν ὀρύσσοντας, οὐκ αὐτὰ τὰ χρυσᾶ ἔνεκα, ἀλλὰ σφίσι γὰρ κατὰ τὴν γῆς ὀρύσσουσιν, ἵνα φωλεύοιεν· κατάπερ οἱ ἡμέτεροι οἱ σμικροὶ μύρμηκες ὀλίγον τὸ γῆς ὀρύσσουσιν. Ἐκένως δὲ, εἶναι γὰρ ἀλωπέκων μέζοντας, πρὸς λόγον τῷ μεγέθεος σφῶν, καὶ τὴν γῆν ὀρύσσειν· τὴν δὲ γῆν, χρυσίτιν εἶναι, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης γίνεσθαι Ἰνδοῖσι τὸ χρυσόν. Ἀλλὰ Μεγαδένης ἀκὴν ἀφηγγέεται· καὶ ἐγὼ ὅτι ἔδεν τάς ἀτρεκέτερον ἀναγράψαι ἔχω, ἀπίημι ἐκὼν τὸ ὑπὲρ τῶν μυρμηκῶν λόγον. Σιτακὲς δὲ Νέαρχος μὲν ὥς δὴ τι θαῦμα ἀφηγγέεται, ὅτι γίνονται ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν γῇ· καὶ ὅποιος ὄρνις ἐσιν ὁ σιτήακος, καὶ ὅπως φωνὴν ἴει ἀνθρωπίνην. Ἐγὼ δὲ ὅτι αὐτὸς τε πολλὰς ὀπώπεια καὶ ἄλλας ἐπισαμένως εἶδεα τὸν ὄρνιθα, ἔδεν ὥς ἀτόπῃ δῆθεν ἀφηγγέσθαι· ἔδεν ὑπὲρ πηθήκων τῷ μεγέθεος, ἢ ὅτι καλοὶ παρ' Ἰνδοῖς πίθηκοι εἰσιν, ἔδεν ὅπως θηρεῶνται ἐρέω. Καὶ γὰρ ταῦτα γνώριμα ἐρῶ, πλὴν γε δὴ, ὅτι καλοὶ πᾶς πίθηκοι εἰσὶ. Καὶ ὅφιας δὲ λέγει Νέαρχος θηρευθῆναι, αἰόλας μὲν καὶ ταχέας· μέγεθος δὲ, ὃν μὲν λέγει εἶναι Πύθωνα τὸν Ἀντιγένης, πῶς ὥς ἐκκαίδεκα· αὐτὰς δὲ τὰς Ἰνδὰς πολὺ μέζοντας τῶν λεγόντων εἶναι τὰς μεγίστους ὀφείας. Ὅσοι δὲ ἰητροὶ Ἕλληνες, ταῦτοισιν οὐδὲν ἄκος ἐξεύρητο, ὅσους ὑπὸ ὀφείας δηχθεῖν Ἰνδικῶν· ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ Ἰνδοὶ ἰῶντο τὰς πληγέντας. Καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε Νέαρχος λέγει· συλλελεγμένους ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν Ἀλέξανδρος Ἰνδῶν ὅσοι ἰητρικὴν σοφώταται· καὶ κεκήρυκτο ἀνα-

τὰ στρατόπεδον, ὅστις δηχθήσῃ, ἐπὶ τὴν σκηπὴν φοιτᾷ τὴν βασιλείῳ. Οἱ ᾗ αὐτοὶ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων νύσων τε καὶ παθῶν ἱητροὶ ἦσαν. Οὐ πολλὰ δὲ ἐν Ἰνδοῖσι πάθηα γίνεται, ὅτι αἱ ὥραι σύμμετροι εἰσὶν αὐτοῖσι. Εἰ δὲ τι μᾶλλον καὶ αὐτοὶ πάθουσι, τοῖσι σοφιστῶσι ἀνεκοιμῶντο καὶ ἐκπῶνοι οὐκ ἄνευ θεῶν ἐδόκειον ἵστασθαι ὅ, τι περ ἰήσιμον.

XVI. Ἐδῆτι δὲ Ἰνδοὶ λινὴν χρέονται, κατὰ περ λέγει Νέαρχος, λινὴ τὴ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνδρῶν, ὑπὲρ ὅτων μοι ἤδη λένεται. Τὸ ᾗ λινὸν τὸτο ἢ λαμπρότερον τὴν χροὴν εἰσὶν ἄλλῃ λινῇ παντός· ἢ μέλανες αὐτοὶ εἶναι. λαμπρότερον τὸ λινὸν φαίνεται ποιέσθαι. Ἐστὶ δὲ κιθῶν λίνεος αὐτοῖς ἔς τε ἐπὶ μέσσην τὴν κνήμην. Εἴμα δὲ, τὸ μὲν, περὶ τοῖσιν ὥμοισι περιβεβλημένον· τὸ δὲ, περὶ τῆσι κεφαλῇσιν ἐλιγμένον. Καὶ ἐνώτια Ἰνδοὶ φορέουσιν ἐλέφαντος, ὅσοι κάρτα εὐδαίμονες· οὐ γὰρ πάντες Ἰνδοὶ φορέουσι. Τὰς δὲ πύγωνας λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι βάπτονται Ἰνδοὶ, χροὴν δὲ ἄλλην καὶ ἄλλην· οἱ μὲν, ὡς λευκὰς φαίνεσθαι, οἷας λευκοτάτας· οἱ δὲ, κυανέας· τὰς δὲ, φοινικέας εἶναι· τὰς ᾗ, καὶ πορφυρέας· ἄλλας, πρασοειδέας. Καὶ σκιάδια ὅτι προβάλλοντα τὰ θέρους ὅσοι οὐκ ἡμελημένοι Ἰνδῶν· ὑποδήματα δὲ λευκοῦ δέρματος φορέουσι, περιτῶς καὶ ταῦτα ἡσκημένα· καὶ τὰ ἵχνη τῶν υποδημάτων αὐτοῖσι ποικίλα καὶ ὑψηλὰ, τὰ μέζονας φαίνεσθαι. Ὀπλίσιος δὲ τῶν Ἰνδῶν, οὐκ ὡὕτως εἰς τρόπον· ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν περὶ αὐτοῖσι τόξον τε ἔχουσιν ἰσόμενες τῶν φορέοντι τὸ τόξον· καὶ ταῦτο κάτω ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν θέντες,

καὶ τῶν ποδῶν τῶν ἀριστερῶν ἀντιβάντες, οὕτως ἐκτοξεύουσι, τὴν νευρὴν ἐπὶ μέγα ὀπίσω ἀπαγαγόντες. Ὁ γὰρ οἷσος αὐτοῖσιν ὀλίγον ἀποδέων τριπήχεος· ἐδέ τι ἀντὶ ἔχει τοξευθῆν πρὸς Ἰνδοῦ ἀνδρὸς τοξικῶν, οὔτε ἀσπίς, ἔτε θώρηξ, ἔτε ὅτι καρτερόν ἐγένετο. Ἐν δὲ τῆσιν ἀριστερῇσι πέλτα εἰσὶν αὐτοῖσιν ὁμοεῖνοι, σθενότερα μὲν ἢ κατὰ τὰς φορέοντας, μήκει δὲ οὐ πολλὸν ἀποδέουσαι. Τοῖσι δὲ ἀκόντες ἀντὶ τόξων εἰσὶ· μάχαιραν δὲ πάντες φορέουσι, πλατέην δὲ, καὶ τὸ μήκος οὐ μέζον τριπήχεος· καὶ ταύτην, ἐπεὶ συσάδην καλῶσιν αὐτοῖσιν ἢ μάχη (τὸ δὲ οὐκ εὐμαρέως Ἰνδοῖσιν ἐς ἀλλήλας γίγνεται)· ἀμφοῖν τῶν χειρῶν καταφέρουσιν ἐς τὴν πληγὴν, τὴν καρτερὴν τὴν πλεονέκτην γενέσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἵππεες ἀκόντια δύο αὐτοῖσιν ἔχουσιν, οἷα τὰ σάυνια ἀκόντια· καὶ πλεονέκτην μικροτέραν τῶν πεζῶν· οἱ δὲ ἵπποι αὐτοῖσιν οὐ σεσαγμένοι εἰσὶν, ἐδέ χαλινῶνται τοῖσιν Ἑλληνικοῖσι χαλινῶσιν ἢ τοῖσι Κελτικοῖσιν ἐμφορέως· ἀλλὰ περὶ ἄκρῳ τῷ σώματι τῶν ἵππων ἐν κύκλῳ ἔχουσιν δέρμα ὁμοεῖνον, ῥάπλον, περιηρημένον· καὶ ἐν τῷ σώματι κέντρα ἢ σιδήρεα, οὐ κάρτα ἔχοντα, ἔσω ἐστραμμένα. Τοῖσι δὲ πλεονέκτοισιν ἐλεφάντινα κέντρα εἰσὶν. Ἐν δὲ τῷ σώματι σιδήρεον αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ἵπποι ἔχουσιν, οἷον περ ὀβελόν, ἐνθεν ἐξηρημένοι εἰσὶν αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ῥυτῆρες. Ἐπεὶ ὅν ἐπαγάγῃ τὸν ῥυτῆρα, ὅ, τε ὀβελὸς κρατεῖ τὸν ἵππον, καὶ τὰ κέντρα, οἷα δὴ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἡρημένα, κεντέοντα, οὐκ ἔστι ἄλλο τι ἢ πείθεσθαι τῷ ῥυτῇρι.

XVII. Τὰ δὲ σώματα ἰσχυρὰ τε εἰσὶν

Ἰνδοὶ καὶ εὐμήκεες, καὶ κῆφοι πολλόν τι ὑπὲρ τὰς ἄλλας ἀνθρώπους. Ὀχήματα δὲ τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς Ἰνδῶν, κάμηλοι εἰσιν, καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ὄνοι. Τοῖς δὲ εὐδαίμοσιν, ἐλέφαντες. Βασιλικὸν γὰρ ὄχημα ὁ ἐλέφας παρ' Ἰνδοῖς ἐστὶ· δεύτερον δὲ τιμὴ ἐπὶ τῷ, τὰ τέθριππα· τρίτον δὲ, αἱ κάμηλοι. Τὸ δὲ ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἵππου ὀχέσθαι, ἄτιμον. Αἱ γυναῖκες δὲ αὐτοῖσιν, ὅσαι κάρτα σώφρονες, ἐπὶ μὲν ἄλλῳ μιᾷ οὐκ ἂν τι διαμάρτοιεν· ἐλέφαντα δὲ λαβῶσα γυνὴ μίσγεται τῷ δόντι. Οὐδὲ αἰσχρὸν Ἰνδοὶ ἄγεσι, τὸ ἐπὶ ἐλέφαντι μιγῆναι· ἀλλὰ καὶ σεμνὸν δοκεῖ τῇσι γυναῖξιν, ἀξίην τὸ κάλλος φανῆναι ἐλέφαντος. Γαμέεσι δὲ ἕτε τι δίδόντες, οὔτε

λαμβάνοντες· ἀλλὰ ὅσαι ἤδη ὠραῖαι γάμῳ, ταύτας οἱ πατέρες προάγοντες εἰς τὸ ἐμφανὲς καθιστῶσιν, ἐκλεξαοθαι τῷ νικήσαντι πάλιν, ἢ πύξ, ἢ δρόμον, ἢ κατ' ἄλλην τινὰ ἀνδρίαν προκρίνεντι. Σιτοφάγοι δὲ καὶ ἀροτῆρες Ἰνδοὶ, ὅσοι γε μὴ ὄρειοι αὐτῶν· οὔτοι δὲ τὰ θήρεα κρέα σιτεύονται. Ταῦτά μοι ἀπόχρη διηλωθαι ὑπὲρ Ἰνδῶν, ὅσα γνωριμώτατα Νέερχός τε καὶ Μεγαθένης δοκίμῳ ἄνδρι ἀναγραφάτην. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔδὲ ἡ ὑπόθεσις μοι τῆσδε τ' συγγραφῆς τὰ Ἰνδῶν νόμιμα ἀναγράψαι ἦν, ἀλλ' ὅπως γὰρ παρεκομίσθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ εἰς Πέρσας ἐξ Ἰνδῶν ὁ ζύλος, ταῦτα δὴ μοι ἐκβολὴ ἔστω τοῦ λόγου.

ABSTRACT

FROM

THE FIRST SEVENTEEN CHAPTERS

OF

ARRIAN'S INDIAN HISTORY.

ARRIAN has himself considered this part of his work as a digression^a, and it is in reality a collection from the Macedonian and Greek writers, who had preceded him in recording all that was then known of Indian manners, customs, history, and geography.

It contains likewise a variety of matter purely mythological, relative to Hercules, and Bacchus or Dionúsus, whose existence or expeditions into India the author treats with little more respect than they merit at the present hour; and the report of which he regards as the ^bboast of the Macedonians, who fought to raise their own son of Ammon above all the deified invaders of India who sprung from the Jupiter of Greece.

Another invasion of India was attributed to Semiramis and the Assyrians, and one more to the Egyptians under Sesostris; but there is so little historical foundation for either, that Sesostris is not noticed in the work before us: and we

know from a variety of authors, as well as Arrian, that the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians, never passed the Attock, but called the conquests, which extended only to the western side of that river, conquests of India.

To omit relations of this sort, or pass them over with the slightest notice, will relieve the reader from the contemplation of subjects from which he can derive neither interest or information. An abstract therefore of these first chapters has been preferred, in which it is allowable to insert nothing but what bears relation to a general knowledge of the country, or what will elucidate the subject proposed, that is, the Voyage of Nearchus.

I. We learn then, that the country west of the Indus, extending from that river to the Kôphês, is possessed by the Astakêni and Assakêni, tribes not properly Indian; for neither is their complexion so dark, neither are they in ^cpersonal form or courage equal to the native

^a Ταῦτα δὲ μοι ΕΚΒΟΛΗ ἔστι τοῦ λόγου. c.
17.

^b Μακεδονικὸν δοκεῖ μοι τὸ κόμπασμα. c. 6.

^c See c. 17.

Indians on the eastern side. They had been subdued, and were tributary to the Assyrians, Medes, and Persians; but they resisted Alexander, and the Assakēni had defended Massaka their capital with great bravery. Peukela was another fortress of importance in the same tract, but nearer to the Indus.

II. On the east of that river is the commencement of India proper, the boundary of which on the north is Taurus, on the south the Ocean, and on the west the Indus.

Taurus is that mountain which, rising from the Bay of Issus in Cilicia, ^dextends through the whole of Asia to the Eastern Ocean. In its course it assumes various names, as Parapánifus in Bactria, Emódus and Imáus in different parts of India. The Macedonians called it Kaukasus, but the real Kaukasus is in Scythia, [between the Euxine and the Caspian Sea.]

Alexander went no farther towards the east than the river Hyphasis, [and thus far only we can speak with precision:] there are indeed some writers who treat of the Ganges, and its issue into the Ocean, and the great city of Palimbothra; but their number is small, [and their authority not always to be depended on.]

III. Eratósthenes of Cyrène is an author of better credit; he calculates ^e13000 stadia from the sources of the Indus to the sea, and the opposite boundary on the east at ^f16000; but in this he includes a great promontory or Chersonese, projecting ^g3000 stadia into the [Southern] Ocean.

Such is the breadth of India from north to south; but the length from west to east is taken first from the Indus to Palimbothra, at 10000 stadia, by the measurement of the royal road; and beyond Palimbothra we cannot speak with certainty: but report says, that it is another 10000 stadia to the ^hCape on the [Eastern] Ocean.

Ctésias supposes that India is equal to all the rest of Asia; Onesicritus estimates it at a third part; Nearchus states it as requiring a journey of four months; Megasthenes converts its length into its breadth, and says it is 16000 stadia where shortest: but from north to south, which he calls its length, he makes it ⁱ22300 stadia.

The rivers of India are larger than any other in Asia; but the most magnificent are the Indus and the Ganges, ^kboth flowing with a greater body of water

^d According to the orthography I have adopted in the Commentary on Ancient Commerce, this word ought to be written Kilikia; and Scythia, Skuthia; but in names long familiar to our ear and eye, this seems fanciful and affected. In oriental names however, which have seldom arrested our attention, the preservation of the Greek orthography is far preferable; for upon a very transient inspection of Ptolemy's catalogues it will readily appear, that he had not only obtained a great number of native appellations in the remotest countries, but that, by adhering to his pronunciation, we can frequently identify them with names at present in existence. The rule therefore to guide me in the present work will be, to continue the Greek pronunciation in the oriental appellations,

but to avoid giving offence by the affectation of writing Skuthia, Nearchus, Arkhias or Booképhalus, for the correspondent names which are familiar to us in another form.

^e 1625 miles.

^f 2000 miles.

^g 375 miles. The great peninsula of Ava and Malacca.

^h This evidently proves that the ancients considered India beyond the Ganges as extending to the Sea of China. The Cape is the Taurus of Eratósthenes.

ⁱ 2787 miles.

^k This may be true of the Ganges, but the Indus is greatly amplified.

than the Nile and the Danube, if they were united. Nay, the Akesines alone, after receiving the Hydaspes, Hydraotes, and Hy'phafis, is entitled to the same preeminence; for its breadth is 30 stadia when it joins the Indus: and it is probable that there are many other rivers still larger.

IV. Beyond the Hy'phafis, which was the limit of the conquests of Alexander, little can be said with certainty: but Megasthenes asserts, that the Ganges is much larger than the Indus; for it is a vast stream from its very source¹, and it receives the Káinas^m, the Erranabóas, and the Kos-Soánu, as well as the Sónus, the Sittokeftisⁿ, and the Solomátis, all navigable streams. Besides these also the Kondókhtes, the Sambus, the Magón, the ^oAgóranis, the O'malis, the ^pKommenáfes, the Kakoothis, and the Andómatis from the country of the Mandiádini, the Amuftis from Katadóopa, the Oxúmagis from Pázala, and the ^qErénnufis, which has its confluence at Mathai. In the opinion of Megasthenes, none of these rivers are less than the Méander: but the Ganges itself is 100 stadia broad where narrowest; and in the season of inundation, where the country is level, the opposite shores are respectively invisible.

The Indus likewise has its tributary streams; for the Hydraotes receiving the Hy'phafis at A'strubæ, the Saranges from the district of the Kènei, and the Neudrus from that of the ^rAttakèni, carries all their waters into the Akesines at Kam-bistholi. The Hydaspes also, after previously receiving the Sinarus, joins the same river at Arispæ: and the Akesines itself, still farther enlarged by the confluence of the Tootapus, falls into the Indus in the country of the ^sMalli: it is a mighty stream, and its name prevails over all the rivers it receives.

On the west of the Indus are the Kôphês, the Malantus, the Soaftus, the Garrhoia, the Párenus, the Saparnus, and the Soánu. The Párenus and Saparnus are the most northern streams, and, where they join the Indus, their mouths are not far distant. The ^tKôphês receives the Malantus, the Soaftus, and the ^uGarrhoia, before it joins the Indus in the Peukaliôtis; and the Soánu, from the mountainous tract of the Bessarians, falls in without a partner.

V. For the multitude and magnitude of these rivers, I leave it, says Arrian, for others to assign the cause; and as to what I have said on the subject, it is only the

¹ This is true, if considered only as entering the plains of India at Koopele or Gangotri: but it has a long course north of the Himmala mountains, of which Megasthenes could not be informed.

^m It is impossible to assign all these rivers to their modern representatives; but it is a subject worthy of enquiry, and, as it can only be prosecuted in the country itself, an object worthy of the Asiatick Society in Bengal. From the little information hitherto obtained, I can only conjecture that the Erranabóas, Kos-Soánu, and Sonus, are three streams united, which join the Ganges under the name of Soane at Dynapoor; for Kos-Soanus is possibly only Koo-Soanus, the mountain Soane.

ⁿ Sittokatis.

^o Aguranis.

^p Komminafis.

^q Ereunefis.

^r The Attakèni (if not a corruption) must be a different tribe from the Astakeni and Assakeni mentioned above.

^s The province of Multan; for *tan* is expressive of a country, as Hindostan, Loristan, &c. and Mul or Mal are interchangeable. Timour writes Hullub for Haleb, or Aleppo.

^t Still called The Cowe.

^u The Guræus, still called Ghour. Colonel Reynolds's Map will give all these rivers on the west, and add to the number.

report of the best accounts I have been able to obtain. But Megástheneſ mentions many other ſtreams beyond the Indus and the Ganges, which take their courſe into the Ocean, ſome to the eaſt, and ſome in a ſouthern direction; reckoning upon the whole fifty-eight that are navigable: but Megástheneſ himſelf ſaw only a ſmall part of India, though he went farther than Alexander, or any of his officers; for he reached the court of Sandracotta, the ſovereign of a moſt extenſive empire, and of a monarch ſtill more powerful, who bore the name of *Pôrus. Megástheneſ ſays, that the potentates of India neither invade other nations, nor are expoſed to invaſion themſelves.

VI. The rainy ſeaſon of India is in the ſummer, when there is a fall of long continuance, not only on the mountains of Parapámifus, Emôduſ, and Imáuſ, but upon the plains below, which are inundated to a great extent. This circumſtance was experienced by Alexander when he was on the banks of the Akeſines; and to a ſimilar cauſe occurring in the mountains of Ethiopia, we may attribute the increaſe of the Nile in the ſame ſeaſon. The rivers of India likewiſe reſemble the Nile in producing the crocodile and the hippopótamus, as Oneſicritus aſſerts.

The natives in the ſouth reſemble the Ethiopians in the colour of their complexion; their hair alſo is black, but not

woolly; neither is their face flattened like the *Ethiopians: but in the northern provinces their make and frame is altogether ſimilar to that of the Egyptians.

VII. Megástheneſ reckons up an hundred and eighteen provinces or nations in India; but how he obtained this number is not clear; for he viſited only a ſmall part of the country, and the intercourſe of theſe ſeverally with each other is not open. The whole body was formerly vagrant, like the Scythian hordes: they had neither cities or temples, they were clothed with the ſkins of the animals which they had taken in the chace: the bark of trees ſerved them for bread, and in their language Tala was the name of the tree. The *fruit of this tree is ſpherical, and grows upon the head like dates on the palm. Their animal food they ate raw before Bacchus came into their country, who civilized them, and introduced the habits of life which are common to the reſt of the world.

VIII. Who this Deity was, or the other who ſubdued India under the name of Hercules, it is fruitleſs to enquire; but to the latter is attributed the diſcovery of the pearl, which he employed as an ornament for his daughter. The pearl in later times was brought to Eurôpe by the merchants who traded with India, and was purchaſed with great avidity both by the Greeks and Romans: its price was fixed at triple its weight in the pureſt

* Poor is an appellative, and not a proper name; it ſignifies Chief, Prince, or Rajah. Alexander met with two; and another of the ſame name, probably at Ougein, ſent an embaſſy to Auguſtus.

† This is a vulgar error; true in theory, but falſe in practice. The laws of Menu give many precepts for the promotion of conqueſt.

‡ The Negroes. Ethiopia, as a general title,

comprehends all the black Africans; but, when uſed precisely, it designates Meroë only.

* See c. xi. He ſays they fed on the φλοιός, and φλοιός is bark: but, by the deſcription of the fruit immediately, we may conclude he means the cocoa, the tree of which is a palm, as well as the date tree of Egypt.

gold of India. In the fishery of it, there is a fable of a king or queen shell fish, like a queen of the bees: but to this [a singular truth] is added, that the method of obtaining the pearl was by suffering the fish itself to putrefy on the shore.

IX. From Bacchus to Sandracotta the Indians reckon an hundred and fifty-three kings, or six thousand forty-two years^b; but, besides Bacchus and Hercules, no foreigner ever invaded their country except Alexander. He indeed subdued all as far as he went; and he would have reduced the whole empire, if his army would have followed him; but such is the justice of the Indians, that they are never known to invade the territories of their neighbours^c.

X. In India no monuments are erected for the dead, but their virtues are considered as a sufficient memorial; and to be celebrated in song is the best record of their worth.

The number of their cities it is impossible to ascertain; those which are contiguous to rivers, or to the sea, are built of wood, as the rains and the inundations would render [unbaked] bricks useless: but those which are built in loftier situations are of brick and clay. The largest city in India is Palimbothra, the capital of the Prasii, at the^d confluence of Erranabóas and the Ganges. The Erranabóas is the third in rank of the Indian rivers, and larger than those of other countries; but upon joining the Ganges its name is lost. The length of Palimbothra, according

to Megasthenes, on both its sides is eighty stadia, and its breadth fifteen. The ditch which encloses it is six hundred feet wide, and its depth forty-five. On the wall are 570 towers, and the gates are sixty-four.

In India there are no slaves; or if there be, they are not Indian, but of a different race, like the Helots of Lacedæmon.

XI. The whole body of natives is distributed into seven tribes or casts. The first consists of their instructors, [the Bramins,] the smallest in number, but the highest in reverence and estimation; for they are subject to no bodily labour, and contribute not to the public revenue. In short, they are subject to no duty, but to perform the sacrifices for the commonwealth; or even when private people sacrifice, a Bramin must attend; for without a Bramin no sacrifice can be acceptable to the Gods. Augury is also wholly confined to this cast; but those only of the order who are denominated Wise, are allowed to exercise the art. Their augury is chiefly concerned in predicting the condition of the approaching seasons, and in cases of public concern: but in private interests augury is not allowed; either because trifling matters are no object, or because the Bramins will not condescend to individuals. If a Bramin fails thrice in his predictions, he is not punished, but condemned to silence; and nothing can compel a man under this sentence to attempt a prediction.

^b Thirty-nine years to a reign.

^c The army of Porus was prepared for the invasion of a neighbouring territory at the time Alexander attacked and defeated him.

^d After all the disputes about the site of this city, I subscribe to Sir William Jones's opinion, that it was at the confluence of Soane and the

Ganges; for the Erranabóas, c. iv, is coupled with Koffoanus and Sónus, and the want of ruins at this junction is no argument against it, if we consider it, as Arrian does, a city built of wood and plaister. Patna is not twenty miles from this junction; and some of our English gentlemen have found an old name for it, resembling Pali-putra.

The ^cBramins are without clothes, basking in the sun during the winter; and in summer, when the heat is excessive, they lie plunged in water, or retire to the shade of the [Banian] trees. These are so large that, according to Nearchus, their umbrage extends to five hundred feet, and ten thousand men can be covered by a single plant.

Their food consists of the fruits of the season, but especially the ^fbark of a tree, which is as sweet and nutritive as the date of the palm.

2. The second tribe consists of husbandmen, and this is far the most numerous; they have no concern with arms or war, but tillage is their sole employment; and their only burden is to pay their taxes to the kings, where the government is regal; or to the public chamber, if they live under a commonwealth. Neither are they disturbed even in time of war; for their persons and their lands are sacred, and two armies may be fighting in their neighbourhood, while they pursue the business of the plough, or the labours of their harvest, unmolested.

3. The third tribe is composed of herdsmen and shepherds; they live in the field, and frequent neither cities or villages, but roam over the country, and prefer the mountains to the plains. There is a tax on their herds and flocks, and they are hunters and fowlers at the same time.

XII. 4. Artificers and traders are comprehended in the fourth class, and these are all subject to a tax upon their gains, except those who are employed in the fa-

brication of arms: these are paid by the public; ship-builders are of this cast, and the *sailors who are* ^h*employed upon the rivers.*

5. The fifth class contains the military; they are more numerous than any of the others, except the husbandmen, and their condition of life is more free and happy. Their profession is their sole employment; for they neither fabricate their arms, or furnish their horses or dress them, or pitch their tents, or clean their accoutrements, or conduct the elephants, or drive their chariots: for all these offices are performed by persons ⁱallotted respectively to each. But in time of war it is their duty to serve; and on the return of peace, they enjoy all the comforts of life, for their pay is sufficient not only to support them at ease, but to maintain their family and their servants.

6. In the sixth class are enumerated those who are called intendants or ^joverseers of the public weal; they visit the cities, the villages, and the country in general, and report to the king, where the government is regal, or to the magistrates, where they live under a commonwealth. It is sacrilege to make a false report; but in fact ^klying is unknown in India.

7. The public counsellors of the realm form the seventh class, whether the government be regal or republican. They are fewest in number, but are esteemed for wisdom and justice above all others; and from this order are selected all that bear rule as governors of districts and cities; all the commanders, naval and mi-

^c Megasthenes confounds the Bramins with the Jogees.

^f Not the bark, but the fruit.

^h Twice before it has been said, that there is no war or invasion in India.

ⁱ Perhaps he means by this, that there are no

other sort of sailors; which is a fact at the present hour.

^j This is the mistake of an office for a class.

^k Happy nation three thousand years ago! for they lie now as readily as the rest of the world.

litary; all that preside over the receipt or expenditure of the revenue; and all that superintend the ¹agriculture of the country.

These are the seven tribes or casts; they are all preserved sacred and distinct: they cannot intermarry, they cannot pass from one tribe to another, and no one is allowed to exercise two crafts, or to practise an art appropriated to a different tribe.

[These particulars are all collected from the authority of Megasthenes, and appear the same, with some slight variation, in Strabo: but Megasthenes seems to have confounded the political institutions with the religious and civil establishments, whereby he has made seven classes out of four, which are now well known to be the Bramins, or religious; the Kshetria, or civil and military; the Vayshya, or mechanics and artificers; and the Soodras, who are the servants of all. But the intermediate shades and distinctions of these are branched into varieties without end; and the grand distinction in India at present is, between Choutres and Parias; those that have a cast, and those that have none: and yet again the Parias are subdivided into superior and inferior casts.]

One circumstance indeed is common to all, that a Gymnosophist (that is, a Jogee) is a character which may be assumed by a man of any cast; because it is not a life of ease, but the most wretched and miserable that can be imagined.

XIII. The Indians pursue the common

beasts of the chase, like the Greeks; but their hunting of the ^melephant is peculiar, because the animal itself is different from all others. The first operation is to select a place in the open and level country, exposed to the utmost heat of the sun. This they enclose with a trench of extent sufficient for the encampment of a large army. The trench is thirty feet deep, and twenty-four wide; and the earth thrown out of this is raised on the brink of the corresponding banks to serve as a rampart. In this rampart, on the outside of the trench, the hunters form a sort of casemate, concealed, and provided with loopholes, through which they can discover the approach of the animal to the enclosure: within the trench, they place three or four of the female elephants that are the most tame. The enclosure has only one entrance, and that over a bridge carried across the trench, which is well covered with earth and grass, that it may cause no suspicion to the wild animal as he advances. The hunters then withdraw themselves into their casemates, where they are completely concealed, and wait for the approach of evening; for during the day time the wild elephants never are seen in the cultivated lands; but at night they wander at large, and follow the master of the herd, as cows follow the bull. When therefore they approach the enclosure, and hear the cry of the females, and are attracted by the scent, they hurry towards the place, and pass along the side of the rampart till they come to the bridge, by which they enter

¹ According to Ayeen Akbari, the proportion of the crop paid in lieu of tax was settled annually by superintendants.

^m The manner of hunting the elephant is familiar to every one: but the whole account is given

here, in order to shew how much information was collected by the Macedonians on this subject, and how little has been added to it by the relations of modern travellers.

the enclosure. As soon as the hunters perceive this, some instantly break down the bridge, and others run to the neighbouring villages, to report that the game is in the toils. Upon this, they mount their best and tamest elephants, and hasten to the spot. Here they pause, before they proceed to the attack of the captives, and leave them unmolested till they are exhausted with thirst and hunger. After giving time for this, they repair the bridge, and advance the tame elephants to the attack. The first encounter is sharp; but the wild ones, as previously oppressed with hunger, are naturally inferior to their invaders. Then the hunters dismount, and fasten cords round the feet of the vanquished; they likewise bring forward the tame ones, and make them strike their adversaries till they fall down from distress. As soon as they are on the ground, the pursuers mount on their backs, and make an incision round their necks with a sharp instrument; into this incision a cord is introduced, so that the head and neck are rendered immovable; and this, however violent the animal may be, is sufficient to prevent the effect of his rage: for if he attempts to turn, the wound is lacerated by means of the cord. He is thus fixed in one posture, and, giving up the contest, suffers himself to be led wherever the tame ones conduct him.

XIV. Those that are caught young, or thought unfit for use, are again let loose; but such as are serviceable they conduct to the villages, and supply them with green fodder in plenty. At first they are sullen, and refuse to eat; but the hunters amuse them with songs, and drums, and music, and by degrees soothe them to a better temper. The intelligent nature of the elephant is above that of

any other animal, and [when they have once become tame] their affection to their keeper or rider is such, that if he falls in battle, they have been known to take up the body, and bring it home for interment. They will likewise defend him by their own efforts if dismounted; and it has been said that some, who from provocation have turned upon their riders and slain them, have actually pined to death, as if sensible of grief, and penitent for their offence. I have myself seen an elephant beat a drum, and dance and keep time to music. The drum he held in his proboscis, and struck it alternately on either knee; while others have danced in a circle round, lifting up and bending their fore legs in turns, and observing the measure according to the beating of the drum. Their rutting time is in spring, and their time of gestation from eleven to eighteen months. The female never has twins, but suckles her young for eight years. The duration of their life is said to be two hundred years, unless they perish by violence or disease; and the Indians have several remedies appropriated to their peculiar disorders.

XV. Tigers are another species peculiar to India. They are as large as a horse, and an overmatch for an elephant. Those which we see in Europe are not tigers, but lynxes, and spotted: [while the royal tiger of India is striped.] Nearchus says, he saw the skin of one, but never saw the animal alive. Neither did he see the ants, [that turn up the gold,] but many skins of these also were brought into the camp. Megasthenes says, they are as large as foxes, but he never saw them; and therefore it is better to pass to another subject. For parrots are described likewise by Nearchus, and their power of imitating the human voice:

this, however thought strange formerly, is now daily experienced in Europe. Monkeys are mentioned by the same author, who speaks of some as beautiful; and serpents, finely spotted and very swift, one of which was killed by Python four and twenty feet long: and the natives said, that there were some larger. The Greeks had no antidote for their bite, but the Indians are provided with one; and some that were possessed of the secret Alexander had always in attendance, and the soldiers who were bit were ordered to apply for relief at the king's tent. The Indians have remedies also for other diseases, but these are not many: and in extraordinary cases recourse is had to the Bramins.

XVI. The clothing in India consists of linen from trees, according to Nearchus; [by which he means cotton:] the colour of this linen is brighter than any other, or else the black complexion of the natives makes it appear more white. Their under garment is a tunic of this material, reaching to the middle of the leg, and a cloak of the same is thrown over their shoulders. The better sort wear earrings of ivory, and their beards are dyed of different colours; some exceeding white, others dark or purple, and some crimson, or even green. All above the lowest carry umbrellas, and wear sandals of white leather, highly ornamented. The heels of these are of different colours, and raised to make them appear taller. Their bows are the height of a man, and, when they shoot, they rest one end of it against their foot, and draw the string back with great force: the length of their arrow is four feet and an half, and its force is such, that neither shield or breastplate is a sufficient defence. In the

left hand they have an oblong target, not so wide as the body, but as high as the wearer. Some are armed with javelins instead of bows, and all have a sabre, [broad towards the hilt,] and four feet and a half long. In close battle this is wielded with both hands, in order to give weight to the blow; but to this there is seldom recourse, as they rarely engage hand to hand.

The horsemen are armed with two javelins, ^a slender and tapering; and their target is smaller than that of the foot. Their horses have neither saddles, housings, or bridles, like those of the Greeks or Gauls; but a strap of leather is fastened round the extremity of the jaw, with a rowel of brass or iron bent inwards, and not very sharp: those who can afford it have the rowel of ivory. The bit is a slender bar of iron, to which the bridle is fastened; and, when they tighten the rein, the bar and the rowel bring the horse under command: for the whole bears upon him in such a manner that he cannot but obey.

XVII. In person the Indians are slender and tall, and active above all others. Their beasts of burden [or for the saddle] are camels, horses, and asses, and, for those who can afford it, elephants. The elephant is peculiar to kings; next in rank is the chariot with four horses; and the last a camel: but to serve on a single horse is not an honourable service. Their women are chaste, and above temptation; but if an elephant is offered as the price of their favours, it is no dishonour to accept it: for they deem a woman worthy of such an offer exalted by the price. Marriages are contracted without consideration of money on either side; but those who have daughters marriageable

^a *σavia*, spit-fashioned.

produce them in public, and the young men who carry the prize in wrestling, boxing, running, or any other manly exercise, have the right to choose their bride out of the number.

The inhabitants of the plain country are agriculturists, and live upon the produce of the field. Those only who live in the mountains are allowed to eat animal food, and this consists of the beasts they kill in the chase.

These particulars relative to India I have collected from Nearchus and Megasthenes, as writers best informed on the subject, and most worthy of credit: but as it was not my object to give a detail of Indian manners and customs, but to deliver an account of the voyage from the

Indus to Persia, performed by the Macedonians, all that is here said may be considered as matter of digression.

[In the preceding Abstract nothing has been omitted which could contribute to exemplify the information relative to India obtained by the Macedonians. Their account, like all first attempts, is confessedly imperfect, and in some instances not accurate; but with the intelligence already brought, and daily bringing, from India, which we now possess, the curiosity of the reader will be more gratified by contemplating the acquisition of knowledge by the ancients, than disappointed in observing the imperfections or inaccuracies of their report.]

ΤΑ ΠΕΡΙ
ΝΕΑΡΧΟΥ.

INDUS.

XVIII. ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΣ γὰρ, ἐπειδὴ αἱ
παρεσκευάστο τὸ ναυλικὸν ἐπὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ, τῶν
τῆσιν ὀχθησιν, ἐπιλεγόμενος ὅσοι τε Φοι-
νίκων, καὶ ὅσοι Κύπριοι ἢ Αἰγύπτιοι εἴ-
ποντο ἐν τῇ ἄνω στρατηλασίῃ, ἐκ τούτων
ἐπλήρωσας νέας, ὑπηρεσίας τε αὐτῇσι καὶ
ἐρέτας ἐπιλεγόμενος ὅσοι τῶν θαλασ-
σίων ἔργων δαήμονες. Ἦσαν δὲ καὶ νη-
σιῶται ἄνδρες οὐκ ὀλίγοι ἐν τῇ στρατίῃ,
οἷς ταῦτα ἔμελλε, καὶ Ἴωνες, καὶ Ἑλλη-
σπόντιοι. Τριήραρχοι δὲ αὐτῶν ἐπετάθη-
σαν ἐκ Μακεδόνων μὲν, Ἡφαισίων τε
Ἀμύντορος, καὶ Λεονάτος ὁ Ἀντίων, καὶ
Λυσίμαχος ὁ Ἀγαθοκλῆς, καὶ Ἀσκλη-
πίδωρος ὁ Τιμάνδρου, καὶ Ἀρχων ὁ Κλε-
νίας, καὶ Δημόνικος ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, καὶ Ἀρ-
χίας ὁ Ἀναξιδότου, καὶ Ὀφελλὰς Σι-
λήνους, καὶ Τιμάνδρου Παντιάδου. Ἦτοι μὲν
Πελλαῖοι. Ἐκ δὲ Ἀμφιπόλεως ἦγον

THE VOYAGE
OF
NEARCHUS.

INDUS.

XVIII. AMONG the multitude which
had followed the army of Alexander in
his progress to the east, the natives of
Phenicia, Cyprus, and Egypt, formed a
considerable body. Out of these he se-
lected such as were used to the sea; and
as soon as the fleet was equipped, which
he had collected on the Hydaspes, he sent
them on board, either to labour at the
oar, or to assist in any other capacity
which the nature of the service might re-
quire.

Besides these, there were Greeks from
the Egæan Islands, from Ionia, and the
Hellespont, who were mariners [as well
as the Phenicians;] but the officers ap-
pointed to command [or to ^bsuperintend
the equipment of the vessels] were all
men of rank in the army.

The Macedonians were

Hephéstion	} son of {	Amyntor.
Leonnátus		Eunus.
Lysímachus		Agáthocles.
Aíklêpiodórus		Timander.
Archôn		Clinias.
Demoníkus		Athenêus.
Archias		Anaxídotus.
Ophellas		Silênus.
Timanthes		Pantiádas.

These were all from Pella.

^a The Greek text is that of Blancard's edition, 1668. with the best readings of Gronovius.

^b Schneider supposes that these officers, called Τριήραρχοι, resembled the Trierarchs of Athens; not commanders, but men charged with the bur-

den of fitting out the public gallees. I think they were honorary commanders; and the expression ἐκ δὲ Ἀμφιπόλεως ἦγον οἶδε, in my opinion, con-
firms it.

οἶδε· ἐκ Κρήτης Νέαρχος Ἀνδροτίμῳ, ὃς
τὰ ἀμφὶ τῷ παράπλῳ ἀνέγραψε· καὶ
Λαμπέδων ὁ Λαρίχῃ, καὶ Ἀνδροθένης
Καλλιστράτῃ· ἐκ δὲ Ὀρεσίδος, Κρατερός
τε ὁ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, καὶ Περδίκκας ὁ Ὀ-
ρώντῳ. Ἐορδαῖοι τε, Πτολεμαῖος τε ὁ
Λάγῳ, καὶ Ἀριστόνῳ ὁ Πεισαΐῳ. Ἐκ
Πύδνης τε, Μήτρῳ τε ὁ Ἐπιχάρμῳ, καὶ
Νικαρχίδῳ ὁ Σίμῳ. Ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀθηαλός
τε ὁ Ἀνδρομένῳ, Στυμφαῖος· καὶ Πευ-
κῆσας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, Μιεζεύῳ· καὶ Πάδῳ
Κρατεῖ, Ἀλκομενεύῳ· καὶ Λεοννάτῳ Ἀν-
τιπάτρῳ, Αἰγαίῳ· καὶ Πάνταυχῳ Νι-
κολάῳ, Ἀλωρίτῃ· καὶ Μυλλέῳ Ζωίλῳ,
Βεροιαῖος. Οὗτοι μὲν οἱ ζῦμπαντες Μα-
κεδόνες. Ἑλλήνων δὲ, Μήδιος μὲν Ὀξυ-
θέμιδος, Λαρισσαῖος, Εὐμενῆς δὲ Ἱερω-
νύμῳ, ἐκ Καρδίης. Κριτόβουλος δὲ Πλά-
τωνος, Κῶος· καὶ Θόας Μηνοδώρῳ, καὶ
Μαίανδρῳ Μανδρογένει, Μάγνητις. Ἀν-
δρῶν δὲ Καβήλῳ, Τήϊος. Κυπρίων δὲ,
Νικοκλῆς Πασικράτης, Σόλιος· καὶ Νι-
δάδῳ Πνταγόρῳ, Σαλαμίνιος. Ἦν ᾗ
δὲ καὶ Πέρσης αὐτῷ τριήραρχος ὁ Βα-
γώας ὁ Φαρναχέως. Τῆς δὲ αὐτῆς Ἀλε-
ξάνδρῳ νεὺς κυβερνήτης ἦν Ὀνησίκριτος
Ἀστυπάλαιεύς· γραμματεὺς δὲ τῷ Σόλῳ
παντός, Εὐαγόρας Εὐκλέωνος, Κορίνθιος.
Ναύαρχος δὲ αὐτοῖσιν ἐπεστάθῃ, Νέαρ-
χος Ἀνδροτίμῳ. Τὸ γένος μὲν Κρήτης, ὁ
Νέαρχος· ὥκει δὲ ἐκ Ἀμφιπόλεως τῇ ἐπὶ
Στρυμόνι. Ὡς δὲ ταῦτα ἐκεκίσμητο Ἀ-
λεξάνδρῳ, ἔθηκε τοῖς θεοῖσιν ὅσοι τε πά-

From Amphipolis were

Nearchus the Cretan	} son of {	Androtimus
Laomedon		Lárichus.
Andróthēnes		Callistratus.

From Orestis were

Cráterus	} son of {	Alexander.
Perdiccas		Orontes.

From Eordæa were

Ptólemy	} son of {	Lagus.
Aristónous		Peisēus.

From Pydna were

Metron	} son of {	Epicharmus.
Nicárchides		Simus.
Attalus of Stympha		Andrómenes.
Peucestas of Miézē		Alexander.
Pithon of Alcómēnē		Cráteas.
Leonnátus of Egæ		Antípater.
Pantauchus of Alóra		Nicoláus.
Mylleas of Berdia		Zóilus.

These were all Macedonians.

The Greeks were

Mēdius of Larissa	} son of {	Oxythemis.
Eúmenes of Cardia		Hierónymus.
Kritobúlus of Cos		Plato.
Thoas of Magnēsia		Menodōrus.
Meander of Magnēsia		Mandrógenes.
Andron of Tēios		Cabēleus.
Níkcōles of Soli		Pasícrates.
Níthaphón of Sálamis		Pnytagoras.
Bagóas the Persian		Pharnúches.

The pilot of Alexander's own ship was

Onesicritus of Astypalæa.

The secretary of the fleet was

Euágoras of Corinth, son of Eúcleon.

And the commander in chief was

Nearchus of Crete, son of Androtimus, who had been enrolled a citizen of Amphipolis upon the Strymon in Thrace; [a city which Philip had taken from the Athenians, and repeopled with a colony of his own establishment.]

As soon as these appointments had taken place, and the fleet was ready to sail, Alexander sacrificed to the Gods of his country, and to such others as the

* N. B. Throughout the work the readings of the Florentine MS. will be admitted into the text without farther notice.

τριοι ἢ μαντευτοὶ αὐτῷ, καὶ Ποσειδῶνι, καὶ Ἀμφιτρίτῃ, καὶ Νηρηΐσι, καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ Ὠκεανῷ· καὶ τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ ποταμῷ, ἀπὸ τοῦ ὁρμαῖο· καὶ τῷ Ἀκείνῃ, εἰς ὅτινα ἐκδιδοίη Ὑδάσπης· καὶ τῷ Ἰνδῷ, εἰς ὅτινα ἄμφω ἐκδιδῶσιν. Ἀγωνεῖς τε αὐτῷ μυσικοὶ καὶ γυμνικοὶ ἐποιῶντο. Καὶ ἱερεῖα τῇ στρατῇ πάσῃ κατὰ τέλεια ἐδίδδοτο.

XIX. Ὡς δὲ πάντα ἐξήρτυτο αὐτῷ εἰς ἀναγωγὴν, Κρατερὸν μὲν τὰ ἐπὶ Θάτερα τῷ Ὑδάσπῃ ἰέναι σὺν στρατῇ πεζῇ ἐκέλευσε. Πεζικῇ δὲ καὶ ἵππικῇ εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ Θάτερα δὲ Ἡφαισίων αὐτῷ παρεπορεύετο, σὺν ἄλλῃ στρατῇ πλείονι ἔτι τῆς τῷ Κρατερῷ συντεταγμένης· καὶ τὰς ἐλέφαντας Ἡφαισίων αὐτῷ ἦγεν, ὄντας εἰς διηκοσίους. Αὐτὸς δὲ τὰς ὑπασπιστὰς καλεομένους ἅμα οἱ ἦγε, καὶ τὰς τοξότας πάντας· καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τὰς ἐταίρους καλεομένους· τὰς πάντας εἰς ὀκτακισλίους. Τοῖσι μὲν δὴ ἄμφι Κρατερὸν καὶ Ἡφαισίωνα ἐτέτακτο ἵνα προπορευθέντες ὑπομένοιεν τὸν σόλον. Φίλιππον δὲ, ὃς αὐτῷ σατράπης τῆς χώρας ταύτης ἦν, ἐπὶ τῷ Ἀκείνῃ ποταμῷ τὰς ὅχθας πέμπει, ἅμα στρατῇ πολλῇ καὶ τέτον. Ἦδη γὰρ καὶ δώδεκα μυριάδες αὐτῷ μάχιμοι εἵποντο, σὺν οἷς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης τε αὐτὸς ἀνήγαγε. Καὶ αὖθις οἱ ἐπὶ συλλογὴν αὐτῷ στρατῶς πεμφθέντες ἦκον, ἔχοντες παντοῖα ἔθνη βαρβαρικά ἅμα οἱ ἄγοντι καὶ πᾶσαν ἰδέην ἀπλισμένα.

augurs prescribed; to Neptune, Amphitritè, and the Nêrêids; to the Ocean, to the river Hydaspes, from which he set out; to the Akesînes, which receives the Hydaspes; and to the Indus, into which both these rivers fall. Games were likewise celebrated both for the exhibition of mental talents and bodily agility; and the sacrifices were distributed to the respective divisions of the army.

XIX. When every thing was now arranged for his departure, Craterus was directed to take the command of a body of infantry, and proceed on the eastern side of the river; while Hephêstion should conduct a much larger force, both horse and foot, with two hundred elephants, on the west. With the king were the ^dHypaspists, all the archers, and the horse styled ^eCompanions, amounting all together to eight thousand. Craterus and Hephêstion were to advance and attend the motions of the fleet; and at the same time Philip, who had been appointed Satrap of the province, was dispatched to the Akesînes with a sufficient force.

At this period Alexander was at the head of 120,000 men, comprehending those he had originally brought out, and those who had joined under the officers he had sent into Greece to collect troops; besides which, he had a variety of native bodies, severally armed according to the fashion of their country.

^d The Macedonian infantry.

^e The *Companions*, or *ἑταῖροι*, were a choice body of cavalry, at the head of which the king al-

ways fought. The *ἰλὴ βασιλική*, or *royal troop*, was the king's own.

Αὐτὸς δὲ ἄρας ταῖς ναυσὶ, κατέπλεε κατὰ τὸν Ὑδάσπεα ἕς τε ἐπὶ τῷ Ἀκесίνῃ τε καὶ τῷ Ὑδάσπεω τὰς συμβολάς. Νῆες δὲ αἱ σύμπασαι αὐτῷ ὀκτακόσκιαι ἦσαν, αἶτε μακρὰ καὶ ὅσα τρυγγύλα πλοῖα, καὶ ἄλλα ἱππαγωγὰ, καὶ σιτία ἅμα τῇ στρατῇ ἄγασαι. Ὅπως μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὰς ποταμὸς κατέπλευσεν αὐτῷ ὁ στόλος, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῷ παράπλῳ ἔθνεα κατεστρέψατο· καὶ ὅπως διὰ κινδύνου αὐτὸς ἐν Μαλλοῖς ἦκε· καὶ τὸ τρῶμα ὃ ἐτρώθη ἐν Μαλλοῖς, καὶ Πευκέςας τε καὶ Λεοννάτος ὅπως ὑπερήσπισαν αὐτὸν πεσόντα· πάντα ταῦτα λέλεκται μοι ἤδη ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ τῇ Ἀττικῇ συγγραφῇ. Ὁ δὲ λόγος ὃδε τῷ παράπλῳ μοι ἀφήγησις ἐστίν, ὃν Νεάρχος σὺν τῷ στόλῳ παρέπλευσεν, ἀπὸ τῷ Ἰνδῷ τῶν ἐκβολέων ὀρμηθεὶς, κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν μεγάλην ἕς τε ἐπὶ τὸν κόλπον τὸν Περσικόν, ἣν δὴ ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν μετεξέτεροι καλέουσι.

XX. Νεάρχῳ δὲ λέλεκται ὑπὲρ τῶν ὁδε ὁ λόγος. Πόθον μὲν εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκπεριπλῶσαι τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν ἀπὸ Ἰνδῶν ἕς τε ἐπὶ τὴν Περσικὴν· ὀκνέειν δὲ αὐτὸν τῷ τε πλόῳ τὸ μῆκος, καὶ μή τινα ἄρα χώραν ἐρήμω ἐγκύρσαντες, ἢ ὄρμῳ ἀπόρῳ, ἢ οὐ συμμέτρως ἐχέσῃ τῶν ὠραίων, ἔτω δὴ διαφθαρῇ αὐτῷ ὁ στόλος· καὶ οὐ φαύλῃ κηλὶς αὕτη τοῖς ἐργοῖσιν

The fleet, with the king on board, now fell down the Hydaspes towards the confluence of that river with the Akesines; it consisted of eight hundred vessels, including galleys, transports, and other barks for the conveyance of horses and provisions. But all that occurred in this navigation has been already specified in my former history. What nations he subdued, what danger he incurred in storming a fort of the Malli, the wound he received, the bravery of Peucestas and Leonnátus in defending him when fallen, are all circumstances which need not be repeated. The present account will be appropriated to Nearchus, from the time of his leaving the Indus, till his arrival in the gulph of Persia, by some called the sea of Erythras.

XX. Nearchus himself has left us an account of these transactions, in which he informs us, that Alexander had a most earnest desire of exploring the passage by sea from India to the Persian gulph; but that he was under great anxiety lest the attempt should expose those who embarked in the expedition to great hazards from the length of the voyage, the desert coasts that might occur, the want of harbours, or the different nature of the winds in the Indian ocean. If any reverse should happen in such an attempt,

¹ Τῇ Ἀττικῇ συγγραφῇ. The history of the expedition of Alexander is written in the Attic dialect; the Indian history in the Ionic.

² Agathárchides distinguishes between the sea of Erythras, and the Erythran or Red sea: the distinction is perhaps not just; for the whole eastern

ocean acquired the title of *Red*, because the ancients approached it by means of the Red sea, that is, the gulph of Arabia; but the mythology of a king Erythras is usually, or constantly, applied to the gulph of Persia.

αὐτῷ τοῖς μεγάλοις ἐπιγενομένη, τὴν πᾶσαν εὐτυχίην αὐτῷ ἀφανίσοι. Ἀλλὰ ἐκνικῆσαι ᾧ αὐτῷ τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν τῆ καὶ νόν τι αἰεὶ καὶ ἄτοπον ἐργάζεσθαι. Ἀπόρως δὲ ἔχεν, ὅτινα ἐκ ἀδυναλὸν τε εἰς τὰ ἐπινοώμενα ἐπιλέξατο καὶ ἅμα τῶν ἐν νῆϊ ἀνδρῶν, ὡς καὶ τῶν τοιούτων στόλον τελομένων ἀφελεῖν τὸ δαῖμα, τῷ δὲ ἡμελημένως αὐτὸς εἰς προὔπλον κίνδυνον ἐκπέμπεσθαι. Λέγει δὲ ὁ Νεάρχος, ἐαυτῷ κοινῶσαι τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον, ὅτινα προχειρίσθαι ἐξηγέεσθαι τῷ στόλῳ ὡς δὲ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ εἰς μνήμην ἰόντα, τὰς μὲν ὡς ἐκ ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν ὑπὲρ ἑ ἀπολέγειν, τὰς δὲ ὡς μαλακὰς τὸν θυμὸν, τὰς δὲ ὡς πόθῳ τῆς οἰκίης κατεχομένους· τοῖς δὲ ἄλλοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἐπικαλέοντα. Τότε δὲ αὐτὸν δὲ ταύτῃ ὑποσάντα εἰπεῖν ὅτι, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ τοι ὑποδέκομαι ἐξηγήσασθαι τῷ στόλῳ, καὶ (εἰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶ θειᾶ ξυνεπιλαμβάνοι) περιάξω τοι σῶας τὰς νέας καὶ τὰς ἀνθρώπους, ἔς τε ἐπὶ τὴν Περσίδα γῆν, εἰ δὲ πλωτός τε εἴη ὁ ταύτης πόντος, καὶ τὸ ἔργον ἐκ ἀπορον γνώμῃ ἀνθρωπίνῃ. Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ λόγῳ

he thought it would be a blot upon all the great actions he had atchieved, and annihilate the character of good fortune which had hitherto attended him in every thing he had attempted. Still the desire of atchieving something new and extraordinary prevailed; but he had much doubt about the proper person to be selected for the accomplishment of his designs.

The first point was to secure the confidence of those who were to embark by the nomination of an experienced commander; for if this were not done, they might apprehend that their lives were to be idly thrown away upon a service where the danger was evident, [and the attempt fruitless.]

For this purpose therefore Alexander consulted Nearchus about the proper person to conduct such an expedition. Several occurred to his recollection; but such and such, he said, would frame excuses, because they were unwilling to incur the hazard; some, for want of spirit, were unfit for the service; and others, because they thought of nothing but returning home. In short, there was some obstacle or other to the appointment of every one that he had named.

In this difficulty, says Nearchus, I offered my own services to the king, and told him, that "I would undertake the command; and that, if it pleased God, I would conduct both the men and fleet in safety to the Persian gulph, provided I should find the sea navigable, and the undertaking practicable by the power of man."

Alexander ^h professed that he was un-

^h The expression is λόγῳ, intimating that it was profession only, and not (ἔργῳ) the real fact, the true feeling of his mind. Those who know the

perpetual contrast of (λόγῳ) word, to (ἔργῳ) deed, in Greek, will readily see that ἔργον is here implied.

μὲν οὐ φάναι ἐθέλειν εἰς τοσὴνδε ταλαι-
πωρίην καὶ τοσόνδε κίνδυνον τῶν τινα ἐαυ-
τῷ φίλων ἐμβάλλειν· αὐτὸν δὲ ταύτῃ δὴ
καὶ μᾶλλον ἔκ ἀνιέναι, ἀλλὰ λιπαρεῖν.
Οὕτω δὴ ἀγαπήσά τε Ἀλεξάνδρον τῷ
Νεάρχῳ τὴν προθυμίην, καὶ ἐπισῆσαι αὐ-
τὸν ἄρχαι τῷ στόλῳ παντός. Καὶ τότε δὴ
ἔτι μᾶλλον τῆς στρατῆς ὅ, τι περ ἐπὶ τῷ
παράπλῳ τῷδε ἐτάσσεται, καὶ τὰς ὑπηρε-
σίας ἵλεω ἔχεν τὴν γνώμην, ὅτι δὴ Νέ-
αρχόν γε ἔποτε ἂν Ἀλεξάνδρος προήκατο
εἰς κίνδυνον καταφανέα, εἰ μὴ καὶ σφι
σώθησθαι ἔμελλον· λαμπρότης τε πολ-
λὴ τῇ παρασκευῇ ἐπέσσα, καὶ κόσμος τῶν
νεῶν, καὶ σπαδὰ τῶν τριηράρχων ἀμφὶ
τὰς ὑπηρεσίας τε καὶ τὰ ἐκπληρώματα
ἐκπρεπέες, καὶ τὰς πάντη δὴ πάλαι κατ-
οκνέοντας, εἰς βόημην ἅμα καὶ ἐλπίδας
χρηστέρας ὑπὲρ τῶν παντὸς ἔργα ἐπηρε-
κὰτα ἦν· πολὺ δὲ δὴ συνεπιλαβέσθαι εἰς
εὐθυμίην τῇ στρατῇ, τὸ δὴ αὐτὸν Ἀλεξ-
άνδρον ὀρμηθέντα κατὰ τῷ Ἰνδῷ τὰ στό-
ματα ἀμφοτέρω ἐκπλώσας εἰς τὸν πόν-
τον, σφάγια τε τῷ Ποσειδῶνι ἐντεμεῖν,
καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι θεοὶ θαλάσσιοι, καὶ δῶρα
μεγαλοπρεπέα τῇ θαλάσῳ χαρίσα-
σθαι. Τῇτε ἄλλῃ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παρα-
λόγῳ εὐτυχίᾳ πεποιθότας, ἔδεν ὅ, τι οὐ
τολμητὸν τε ἐκένω καὶ ἐκτὸν ἐξηγέ-
σθαι.

XXI. Ὡς δὲ τὰ ἐτήσια πνεύματα
ἐκοιμήθη (ἃ δὴ τῷ θερέος τὴν ὥρην πᾶ-
σαν κατέχει ἐκ τῷ πελάγεος ἐπιπνέοντα

willing to expose any one of his friends
to a service of such danger and distress :
but, when Nearchus still persevered in his
offer, and urged the acceptance of his
proposal, Alexander was delighted with
his alacrity, and instantly appointed him
to the command.

This appointment had the full effect
it was intended to produce ; for the [offi-
cers,] seamen, and soldiers, who were
destined for the expedition, now set their
minds at ease : conscious as they were,
that Alexander would not have named a
man so dear to him as Nearchus, unless
there were a reasonable prospect of suc-
cess in the undertaking.

Under this impression, the fleet was
equipped not only with what was neces-
sary, but with splendour and decoration.
The attention of the Trierarchs was di-
rected to procure the best men, and the
fullest complements ; and the backward-
ness of those, who had been most unwill-
ing to embark, was now converted into
confidence, and pleasing hopes of a fa-
vourable issue of the voyage.

A presage no less gratifying arose from
the undertaking of Alexander himself to
navigate the two branches of the Indus
to the sea ; upon which occasion he ad-
vanced into the ocean, and sacrificed to
Neptune, and all the deities of the ele-
ment ; the sea itself also was honoured
with his munificence. In short, nothing
was wanting to confirm them in the idea,
that the unparalleled fortune of their so-
vereign supplied him with courage to at-
tempt, and means to accomplish, all [that
was possible to man.]

XXI. In the Indian ocean there is a
regular wind which sets upon the coast
during the whole summer season ; and,
while that prevails, there is no navigation
[to the westward.] It was in this season

ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ ταύτην, ἄπορον τὸν πλεῖν ποιεόντα) τότε δὴ ὤρμητο, ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Ἀθήνησι Κηφισοδώρῃ, ἐκάδῃ τῷ Βοηδρομιῶνος μηνός, καὶ ὅτι Ἀθηναῖοι ἄγουσιν ὡς δὲ Μακεδόνες τε καὶ Ἀσιανοὶ ἦγον, τὸ ἐνδέκατον βασιλεύοντος Ἀλεξάνδρου. Θύει δὲ καὶ Νεάρχος πρὸ τῆς ἀναγωγῆς Διὶ σωτῆρι, καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιεῖ καὶ οὗτος γυμνικόν. Ἄραντες δὲ ἀπὸ τῷ ναυσάθμῃ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ κατὰ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ὀρμίζονται ποταμὸν πρὸς διώρυγιν μεγάλην, καὶ μένουσιν αὐτῷ δύο ἡμέρας. Στρατὸς δὲ ὄνομα ἦν τῷ χώρῳ· σάδιοι ἀπὸ τῷ ναυσάθμῃ εἰς ἑκατόν. Τῇ τρίτῃ δὲ ἄραντες, ἔπλεον εἰς τε ἐπὶ διώρυγαν ἄλλην, σάδιος τριάκοντα, ἀλμυρὴν ἤδη ταύτην τὴν διώρυγαν· ἀνῆκε γὰρ ἡ θάλασσα εἰς αὐτήν, μάλιστα μὲν ἐν τῇσι πλημμυρίῃσιν· ὑπέμεινε δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀμπάττει τὸ ὕδωρ μεμιγμένον τῷ ποταμῷ· Καύμαρα δὲ ὄνομα ἦν τῷ χώρῳ. Ἐνθεν δὲ εἴκοσι σάδιος καταπλώσαντες, εἰς Κορέεσιν ὀρμίζονται, ἔτι κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν. Ἐνθεν δὲ ὀρμηθέντες, ἔπλεον ἐκ ἐπὶ πολλόν· ἔρμα γὰρ ἐφάνη αὐτοῖσι κατὰ τὴν ἐκβολὴν τὴν ταύτην τῷ Ἰνδῷ, καὶ τὰ κύματα ἐρήρχθαι πρὸς τῇ ἡϊόνι, καὶ ἡ ἡϊὼν αὐτὴ τραχεῖα ἦν. Ἀλλὰ ἵνα περ μαλθακὸν ἦν τῷ ἔρματος, ταύτην διώρυγαν ποιήσαντες

that Alexander had reached the delta of the Indus; but, upon the change of this wind, the voyage commenced, in the archonship of Céphisodorus, on the twentieth of ^k Boëdromion, as the Athenians reckon, and in the eleventh year of Alexander's reign, according to the computation of the Macedonians, and the people of Asia.

Before he embarked, Nearchus had sacrificed to Jupiter the Preserver, and performed the games usual upon such occasions. He then went on board, and, taking his departure, he dropped down the Indus to a large canal or cut, where he remained for two days: the place is named Stoorā; about a hundred stadia from his former anchorage. On the third day he fell down thirty stadia lower to Kauramara, another cut, and here the water was brackish; for the sea comes up as far as this upon the tide of flood, and even upon the ebb the salt water is still mingled with the fresh. Their next progress was only twenty stadia, to Koreestis, and, upon quitting this, they were soon forced to come to an anchor again, for they perceived a bar at the mouth of the river, and a great ^l surf without, beating with much noise and violence on the shore, and the shore itself was broken. The foil, however, of the bar, when the tide left it, was soft; and, taking advantage of this, they cut a channel through

^l The day named for the change of the S. W. monsoon is the fifteenth of September; the moon in that month is called St. Anthony's moon, and the full of that moon is the precise day in common acceptance. Nearchus sailed the first of October, and he might therefore say, (ὡς ἐτήσια ἐκιομήθη,) as soon as the monsoon was lulled. But he found by experience that the contrary monsoon does not

become fixed till towards the middle of November.

^k The twentieth of Boëdromion in that year answers to the first of October, 326 before Christ, according to Usher and Dodwell. See the Commentary.

^l The wind lying on the shore, and causing a surf, is a proof that on this day the wind was still from the S. W. and the monsoon not settled.

ἐπὶ σταδίας πέντε, διήγον τὰς νέας ἐπειδὴ ἡ πλημμύρα ἐπῆλθεν ἢ ἐκ τῆς πόντου. Ἐκπεριπλώσαντες δὲ σταδίας πενήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὶν, ὁρμίζονται εἰς Κρωκέλα νῆσον ἀμμάδεα· καὶ μένυσιν αὐτῇ τὴν ἄλλην ἡμέραν. Προσοικέει δὲ ταύτῃ ἔθνος Ἰνδικόν, οἱ Ἀράβιες καλεόμενοι, ὧν καὶ ἐν τῇ μέσῃ ζυγγραφῇ μνήμην ἔχον· καὶ ὅτι εἰσὶν ἐπάνυμοι ποταμῷ Ἀράβιος, ὃς διὰ τῆς γῆς αὐτῶν ῥέων, ἐκδίδοι εἰς θάλασσαν, ὁρίζων τέτων τε τὴν χώραν καὶ τῶν Ὠρετῶν. Ἐκ δὲ Κρωκέλων ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἔχοντες ὄρος τὸ καλεόμενον αὐτοῖσιν Εἶρον, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ νῆσον ἀλιένεα ἔπλεον. Ἡ δὲ νῆσος παρατεταμένη τῇ ἡϊόνι, κόλπον τενὸν ποιεῖ. Διεκπελεύσαντες δὲ ταύτην, ὁρμίζονται ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ· ὅτι δὲ μέγας τε καὶ καλὸς ὁ λιμὴν, Νεάρχῳ ἔδοξεν, ἐπονομάζει αὐτὸν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ λιμένα. Νῆσος δὲ ἐστὶ ἐπὶ τῷ σώματι τῆς λιμένος ὅσον σταδίας δύο ἀπέχουσα, Βίβακτα ὄνομα τῇ νήσῳ· ὁ δὲ χώρος ἅπας Σάγгада. Ἡ δὲ νῆσος καὶ τὸν λιμένα, προκειμένη πρὸς τῆς πελάγεος, αὐτῇ ἐποίησεν. Ἐνταῦθα πνεύματα μεγάλα ἐκ τῆς πόντου ἔπνεε καὶ συνεχέα. Καὶ Νεάρχος δάσας τῶν βαρβάρων μή τινες συνταχθέντες ἐπ' ἀρπαγὴν τῆς στρατοπέδου τραποῖατο, ἐκτεχνίζει τὸν χώρον λιθίνῳ τέχει· τέσσαρες δὲ καὶ εἰκοσὶν ἡμέρας τῇ μονῇ ἐγένοντο. Καὶ λέγει, ὅτι μύας τε ἐθήρων τὰς θαλασσίους οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ ὄστρεα, καὶ τὰς σωλήνας καλεομένους, αὐτο-

it for five stadia, so that when the tide rose again, and filled it, they carried the fleet through it into the open sea: and then sailing round the coast for an hundred and fifty stadia, they reached the harbour of Krökela. Here they came to Crutchey bay, an anchor near a sandy islet, and remained here the following day.

Adjoining to Krökela is the country of Arabies, an Indian tribe, mentioned in the former history; they take their name from the river Arabis, which divides their country on the west from the Oritæ.

Upon leaving Krökela, they followed the coast with a mountain called Eirus Cape Monze. on their right, and a low island, almost level with the sea, on the left hand. This island, corresponding with the shore on the main, forms a narrow channel; through this they passed, and anchored in a good harbour, which is sheltered by an island called Bibactè. The harbour Chilney. here was so safe, that Nearchus honoured it with the name of Alexander. The island lies off it at the distance of two stadia; the country round is called Sângada.

While lying here, the wind came on so violently from the ^m south west, that it was thought unadvisable to move. Nearchus therefore brought his ships' companies on shore, and formed a camp, which he fortified with a rampart of stone as a defence against the natives, if they should be disposed to hostility. But his distress was great; for he was confined here four and twenty days. The people had only brackish water to drink, and the only supply they could find were oysters, cockles, and a sort of shell-fish

^m Literally, from the sea; which, in regard to the position of this harbour, is S. W. from which it

is evident that the S. W. monsoon still prevailed till the end of October.

πα τὸ μέγεθος, ὡς τοῖσιν ἐν τῇδε τῇ
ἡμετέρῃ θαλάσῃ συμβαλεῖν· καὶ ὕδωρ
ὅτι ἀλμυρὸν ἐπίνετο.

XXII. Ἄμα τε ὁ ἄνεμος ἐπαύσατο,
καὶ οἱ ἀνήγοντο· καὶ περαιωθέντες σαδίς
εἰς ἐξήκοντα, ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ
ψαμμώδει. Νῆσος δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ αἰγιαλῷ
ἐρήμη· ταύτην ὃ πρόβλημα ποιησάμενοι,
ὁρμίωσαν· Δόμαι ὄνομα τῇ νήσῳ. Ἦ-
δωρ δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ· ἀλλὰ προ-
ελθόντες εἰς τὴν μεσογείην ὅσον ἑκοσι
σαδίς, ἐπιτυγχάνουσιν ὕδατι καλῷ· τῇ
δὲ ὑπεράνω εἰς νύκτα αὐτοῖς ὁ πλώος ἐγί-
νετο εἰς Σάραγγα σαδίς τριηκοσίς, καὶ
ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ καὶ ὕδωρ ἦν
ἀπὸ τῆς αἰγιαλῆς ὅσον ὀκτὼ σαδίς. Ἐν-
θεν δὲ πλώσαντες, ὁρμίζονται ἐν Σακά-
λοισι, τόπῳ ἐρήμῳ. Καὶ δὴ ἐκπλώσαν-
τες σκοπέλως δύο, ἔτι τι ἀλλήλοις πε-
λάζοντας ὥστε τὰς τὰς τῶν νεῶν ἀπ-
τεῖσθαι ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῶν πετρεῶν,
καθορμίζονται ἐν Μοροντοβαρβάραις, σα-
δίς διελθόντες εἰς τριηκοσίς. Ὁ δὲ
λιμὴν μέγας καὶ εὐκυκλος, καὶ βαθύς,
καὶ ἀκλυτός· ὁ δὲ ἑσπλὺς εἰς αὐτὸν, σει-
νός. Τῆτον τῇ γλώσσῃ τῇ ἐπιχωρίῃ Γυ-
ναικῶν λιμένα ἐκάλεον, ὅτι γυνὴ τῆς χῶ-
ρος τῆς πρώτης ἐπῆρξεν. Ὡς δὲ διὰ τῶν
σκοπέλων διεξέπλεον, κύμασί τε μεγά-
λοις ἐνέκυρσαν, καὶ τῇ θαλάσῃ ῥοώθη.
Ἀλλὰ ἐκπεριπλώσας γὰρ ὑπὲρ τὰς σκο-
πέλως, μέγα ἔργον ἐφάνετο. Ἐς δὲ τὴν
ὑπεράνω ἔπλεον, νῆσον εἰς ἀριστερὰ ἔχοντες

called solénés, which greatly exceed in
size all that are found in our seas [the
Mediterranean.]

XXII. Upon the cessation of the wind
from the south west, the fleet once more
set sail, and proceeded sixty stadia, when
they anchored on a sandy shore, under the
lee of a desert island called Domæ; but
here they found no water: at the dis-
tance, however, of twenty stadia, some
was discovered that was excellent. When
they left this place the following morn-
ing, they continued their course the whole
day; and, after a passage of three hun-
dred stadia, reached Saranga in the even-
ing: here they rode at anchor upon the
open shore, and found water at the dis-
tance of eight stadia from the coast.

Their next anchorage was at Sácala, on
an open and desert shore; and, weighing
from thence, they passed between two
islets so near, that their oars brushed the
rocks on each side, and at last reached
Morontobarbara, after a course of three
hundred stadia. This is a fine harbour,
well sheltered from all winds, large and
deep, but with a narrow entrance. In the
language of the natives it implies the
harbour of women, because [according to
the tradition of the place] a queen was
the first sovereign of the country. In
their passage, besides the danger of the
rocks, they had encountered a^a severe
gale, and a very violent current, and
thought they had performed wonders in
surmounting the dangers that surrounded
them.

The following morning they left Mo-
rontobarbara, and proceeded with an
island on their left, which sheltered them
from the south west; and which ran along

^a This is another instance of the prevalence of the S. W. monsoon still.

πρὸ τῆς πελάγους, ἔτω τι τῷ αἰγιαλῷ συναφεία, ὥς τε εἰκάσαι ἂν διώρυχα εἶναι τὸ μέσον τῆς τε αἰγιαλῷ καὶ τῆς νήσου. Σταδίοι οἱ πάντες ἐβδομήκοντα τῆς δέκ-
 πλῆ· καὶ ἐπὶ τε τῷ αἰγιαλῷ δένδρεα ἦν πολλὰ καὶ δασέα, καὶ ἡ νῆσος ὕλη παν-
 ταίῃ σύσκιος. Ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἑὺ ἔπλεον ἔξω τῆς νήσου, κατὰ ῥήγαν σπηλῆν. Ἔτι γὰρ ἀνάπτως κατέειχε. Πλώσαντες δὲ ἐς ἑκατὸν καὶ ἑκοσι σταδίους, ὁρμίζονται ἐν τῷ στόματι τῆς Ἀράβιος ποταμῆς. Καὶ λι-
 μὴν μέγας καὶ καλὸς πρὸς τῷ στόματι· ὕδωρ δὲ ἐκ ἧν πόσιμον. Τῆς γὰρ Ἀρά-
 βιος αἱ ἐκβολαὶ ἀναμεμιγμέναι τῷ πόν-
 τῳ ἦσαν. Ἀλλὰ τεσσαράκοντα σταδίους ἐς τὸ ἄνω προχωρήσαντες, λάκκῳ ἐπι-
 τυγχάνουσι· καὶ ἐνθεν ὑδρευσάμενοι, ὀπίσω ἀπενόστησαν. Νῆσος δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ λιμένι ὑψηλὴ καὶ ἔρημος· καὶ περὶ ταύτην ὀστρεῶν τε καὶ ἰχθύων παντοδαπῶν θήρα. Μή-
 χρι μὲν τῷδε Ἀράβιος, ἔχεται Ἰνδῶν, ταύτην ὠκισάμενοι· τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τῷδε Ὀ-
 ρῆται ἐπὶ ἄχον.

XXIII. Ὁρμηθέντες δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἐκβο-
 λῆς τῆς Ἀράβιος, παρέπλεον τῶν Ὀρι-
 τῶν τὴν χώραν καὶ ὁρμίζονται ἐν Παγά-
 λαισι, πλώσαντες σταδίους ἐς διηκοσίους,
 πρὸς ῥήγαν· ἀλλὰ ἀγκυρῆσι γὰρ ἐπί-
 βολος ἦν ὁ χώρος. Τὰ μὲν οὖν πληρώ-
 ματα ἀπεσάλευον ἐν τῇσι νηυσὶν· αἱ δὲ
 ἐφ' ὕδωρ ἐκβάντες, ὑδρεύοντο. Τῇ δὲ
 ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναχθέντες ἅμα ἡμέρῃ, καὶ πλώ-
 σαντες σταδίους ἐς τριήκοντα καὶ τετρακο-

so parallel to the coast, that it seemed ra-
 ther an artificial cut than an arm of the
 sea. Both sides of this channel were well
 wooded, and the trees stood extremely
 thick; its extent was seventy stadia. Dur-
 ing the morning they cleared the island,
 but the passage was narrow, and full of
 shoals, and they had moved upon the ebb
 of the tide. The distance from this strait
 to the river A'rabis is an hundred and
 twenty stadia, which they reached the
 same day. The harbour at the mouth of
 this river is large and good, but the ^{The Som-}
 water is not drinkable on account of its ^{meany.}
 intermixture with the sea. At the dif-
 fance, however, of forty stadia, they found
 a pool or well, from whence they ob-
 tained a supply, and brought it down to
 the fleet. Not far from the harbour rises
 a desert island to a considerable height,
 in the neighbourhood of which oysters,
 and fish of all sorts, may be procured.
 The river is the boundary between the
 country of the Arabiēs and Oritæ; and
 the Arabiēs are the last of the Indian
 tribes towards the west.

XXIII. From the mouth of the A'ra-
 bis, the fleet coasted the territory of the
 Oritæ till it reached Pagala, after a course
 of two hundred stadia. This was no har-
 bour, but an open road, where there was
 good holding indeed for the anchors, but
 the ground was foul and shoally; and the
 men were not permitted to land, except a
 few to procure water. The next morn-
 ing, as soon as it was day, they weigh-
 ed, and stood on for four hundred and

• Sommeany is the modern name of the town.
 Colonel Reynolds.

The real name of the river has been obtained by

σίῃς, κατὰγονται ἐσπέριοι εἰς Κάβανα, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ ἐρήμῳ. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ῥηχρὴ τραχὺή ἦν, καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε μετεώρης τὰς νέας ὠρμίσαντο. Κατὰ τῆτον τὸν πλόον πνεῦμα ὑπολαμβάνει τὰς νέας μέγα ἐκ πόντος. Καὶ νέες δύο μακρὰι διαφθάρονται ἐν τῷ πλώῳ, καὶ κέρκυρος. Οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι σώζονται ἀπονηζόμενοι, ὅτι οὐ πόρρω τῆς γῆς ὁ πλόος ἐγένετο. Ἀμφὶ δὲ μέσας νύκτας ἀναχθέντες πλέουσιν εἰς τε ἐπὶ Κώκαλα τῷ αἰγιαλῷ, ἐνθεν ὠρμήθησαν, ἀπέχεσθαι δὲ διηκουσίαις. Καὶ αἱ μὲν νῆες σαλεύσαι ὤρμεον. Τὰ πληρώματα δὲ ἐκβιάσας Νέαρχος πρὸς τῇ γῇ ἠυλίωθη, ὅτι ἐπὶ πολλὸν τεταλαιπωρηκότες ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ, ἀναπαύσασθαι ἐπόθειον. Στρατόπεδον δὲ περιβάλλετο, τῶν βαρβάρων τῆς Φυλακῆς ἕνεκα. Ἐν τῷ τῷ χώρῳ Λεονάτος, ὅτῳ τὰ Ὀρεπῶν ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπετέτραπτο, μάχῃ μεγάλη νικᾷ Ὀρεπας τε καὶ ὅσοι Ὀρεπταις συνεπλάθοντο τῷ ἔργῳ. Καὶ κτείνει αὐτῶν ἑξακισχίλις, καὶ τὸς ἡγεμόνας πάντας. Τῶν δὲ σὺν Λεονάτῳ ἰππῆς μὲν ἀποθνήσκουσι πεντεκαίδεκα, τῶν δὲ πεζῶν ἄλλοι καὶ Ἀπολλοφάνης ὁ Γαδρωσίῳ σατραπῆς. Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ ξυγγραφῇ ἀναγράφονται καὶ ὅπως Λεονάτος ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐσφανάθη πρὸς Ἀλεξ-

thirty stadia, till they reached Kábana in the evening: this again was nothing better than open road, with foul and broken ground, where they were obliged to anchor, as before, without landing. In this day's course they experienced a severe gale setting on the shore, in which two of the gallies, and one of the transports, were lost; but, as they foundered near the shore, the men escaped by swimming. Here they staid no longer than till midnight, and then proceeded two hundred stadia to Kókala. This was no harbour, the ships rode at anchor on an open shore; but it was become absolutely necessary to land the men, as they had suffered much from the weather and confinement on board, and were in great need of refreshment.

Nearchus therefore landed his whole force, and fortified a camp on shore to prevent a surprize from the natives. Relief, however, was at hand; for in this camp they were joined by Leonnátus, whom Alexander had left in command of the country, and who had defeated the Orítæ and their allies in a great battle, in which he had killed six thousand, with all their commanders; and lost of his own force only fifteen horse, and a small proportion of infantry: but one of the slain was Apollóphanes, satrap of Gadrófia. This victory, and the crown of gold bestowed upon Leonnátus, I have

^p This is the last instance of distress from the wind; and, as the journal is here brought to the eleventh of November, the monsoon, we may conclude, was now fixed. From the following station at Kókala they sailed [ἀέρας] with a steady wind in their favour.

¹ For Pájala, Kábana, and Kókala, mere open roads, it cannot be expected that representatives should be found: but three names occur in Commodore Robinson's chart between the Sommesy [Arabia] and the Tomêrus, which are, Arrah, Cudjerah, and Kingalah.

ἀνδρῶν χρυσῷ τεφάνῳ, ἐν Μακεδόσιν. Ἐταῦθα σίτος ἦν νενεμημένος κατὰ πρόσταγμα Ἀλεξάνδρου, ἐς ἐπιστισμὸν τῷ στρατῷ. Καὶ ἐμβάλλονται σιτία ἡμερέων δέκα ἐς τὰς νῆας. Καὶ τῶν νεῶν ὅσαι πεπονθήκεσαν κατὰ τὸν πλόνον μέχρι τῆδε, ἐπεσκεύασαν. Καὶ τῶν ναυτῶν ὅσοι ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ βλακύνειν ἐφάνοντο Νεάρχῳ, τῆτες μὲν περὶ ἅγειν Λεοννάτῳ ἔδωκεν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν σὺν Λεοννάτῳ στρατιωτῶν συμπληροῖ τὸ ναυτικόν.

XXIV. Ἐνθενδὲ ὁρμηθέντες ἔπλεον ἀκράει καὶ διελθόντες σταδίους ἐς πεντακοσίους, ὠρμίζοντο πρὸς ποταμῷ χειμάρρῳ· Τόμηρος ὄνομα ἦν τῷ ποταμῷ, καὶ λίμνη ἦν ἐπὶ ταῖς ἐκβολαῖς τῆ ποταμῆς. Τὰ δὲ βράχεια τὰ πρὸς τῷ αἰγιαλῷ ἐπώκειον ἄνθρωποι ἐν καλύβαις πνιγηραῖς καὶ οὗτοι ὡς προσπλέοντας εἶδον, ἐθάμβησάν τε, καὶ παρατέναντες σφᾶς παρὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν, ἐτάχθησαν ὡς ἀπομαχόμενοι πρὸς τὰς ἐκβάοντας. Λόγχα δὲ ἐφόρεον παχείας, μέγεθος ὡς ἐξαπήχας. Ἀκωκὴ ᾗ ἐκ ἐπῆν σιδηρῆ, ἀλλὰ τὸ ὄξύ αὐτῇσι πεφυρακτωμένοι τὸ αὐτὸ ἐποίεε. Πλήθος δὲ ἦσαν ὡς ἐξακόσιοι. Καὶ τῆτες Νεάρχος ὡς ὑπομένοντας τε καὶ παρατεταγμένους κατὰδε, τὰς μὲν νῆας ἀνακωχέειν κελεύει ἐντὸς βέλους, ὡς τὰ τοξεύματα ἐς τὴν γῆν ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἐξικνεῖσθαι. Αἱ γὰρ τῶν βαρβάρων λόγχα παχέαι φαινόμεναι, ἀγχείμαχοι

already mentioned in my former history. Leonnátus likewise brought a supply of corn, which Alexander had provided for the fleet, sufficient for ten days' expenditure. And here Nearchus took the opportunity of repairing such vessels as had suffered in the voyage; at the same time discharging several of his men who had shrunk from their duty, and receiving others from Leonnátus in exchange, who were fitter for the service.

XXIV. [With a full complement, and a fresh supply of provisions,] and with a steady wind in his favour, Nearchus weighed from Kòkala, and, after a course of five hundred stadia, reached a winter torrent called Tomérus, which formed a harbour at its mouth. The country in the neighbourhood was low and marshy, and the cabins of the natives small and suffocating; but, upon the approach of the fleet, they collected in a body, and formed upon the shore, to prevent the strangers from landing. They were armed with lances, stoutly made, and nine feet long; not pointed with iron, but hardened in the fire, and very sharp. Their number might be about six hundred.

Upon observing the opposition intended, Nearchus formed his fleet out of reach of their javelins, but still within command of his archers; for the javelins were heavy, and adapted rather for close fighting, than for annoyance at a distance.

* This circumstance affords a probability that the whole fleet was drawn on shore, and not exposed to the danger of riding at anchor in an open road.

* If we allow ten days for these services, it brings the journal to the twenty-first of November: after which date, all navigators agree that the monsoon is completely steady.

μὲν, ἄφοβοι δὲ εἰς τὸ ἀκοντίζεσθαι ἦσαν. Αὐτοὺς δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὅσοι αὐτοὶ τε κερφότατοι καὶ κερφότατα ὠπλισμένοι, τῷ τε νῆϊ δαημονέσασθαι, τέτῳ δὲ ἐκνήζεσθαι κελεύει ἀπὸ ξυνδήματος. Πρόσταγμα δὲ σφίσιν ἦν, ὅπως τις ἐκνήζεσθαι εὐαίῃ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι, προσμένειν τὸν παρατάτην οἱ ἐσόμενον· μηδὲ βάλλειν πρόωθεν πρὸς τὰς βαρβάρους, πρὶν ἐπὶ τριῶν εἰς βάθος ταχθῆναι τὴν φάλαγγα· τότε δὲ δρόμῳ ἤδη ἰέναι, ἐπαλαλάσασθαι. Ἄμα δὲ ἐρρίπην ἑαυτοὺς οἱ ἐπὶ τῷδε τεταγμένοι ἐκ τῶν νεῶν εἰς τὸν πόντον, καὶ ἐνήχοντο ὀξέως, καὶ ἔσαντο ἐν κόσμῳ. Καὶ φάλαγγα ἐκ σφῶν ποιησάμενοι, δρόμῳ ἐπήεσαν αὐτοὶ τε ἀλαλάζοντες τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ, καὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ νεῶν ξυνεπηχέοντες· τοξεύματά τε καὶ ἀπὸ μηχανῶν βέλεα ἐφέροντο εἰς τὰς βαρβάρους. Οἱ δὲ τὴν τε λαμπρότητα τῶν ἄστων ἐκπλαγέτες, καὶ τῆς ἐφόδου τὴν ὀξύτητα, καὶ πρὸς τῶν τοξευμάτων τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βελῶν βαλλόμενοι, οἷα δὴ ἡμίγυμνοι ἄνθρωποι, ἐδὲ ὀλίγον εἰς ἀλκὴν τραπέντες ἐγκλίνουσι. Καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν φεύγοντες ἀποθήσκουσιν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀλίσκονται· ἐς δὲ οἱ καὶ διέφυγον εἰς τὰ ἔρημα. Ἦσαν δὲ οἱ ἀλόντες τὰ τε ἄλλα σώματα δασεές, καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς, καὶ τὰς ὀνυχὰς θηριώδεις. Τοῖς γὰρ δὴ ὄνυξιν ὅσα σιδήρῳ διαχρᾶσθαι ἐλέγοντο, καὶ τοὺς ἰχθυίας ταῖτοις παραχρίζοντες κατεργάζεσθαι, καὶ τῶν ξύλων ὅσα μαλακώτερα·

As soon as he was ready for the charge, he selected such of his men as were most active and lightest armed, and the most expert swimmers, to plunge off from the ships at a signal. The first man who touched the ground with his feet was to halt in his place, and be looked to as the point upon which the line was to be formed; and from this point no one was to advance upon the enemy till the line was completed to three in file. But as soon as this was effected, they were to shout, and advance with their utmost speed to the attack. The whole was executed with precision; the men selected for the service sprung from the ships, and swam vigorously towards the shore; they took their position, formed the line, and then rushed upon the enemy with the cry of Alala, the shout of war. In the mean time the people on board joined in the clamour; they plied their bows, they discharged their engines, and had the satisfaction to find that they reached the enemy.

The natives were not proof against such an assault: the splendour of the armour, the rapidity of the movements, the execution of the artillery, upon their ill armed ranks, soon determined the contest to their disadvantage. Many fell in their flight, many were taken prisoners, and some few escaped to the mountains.

When the prisoners were brought in, they were observed to be covered with hair upon their bodies, and their nails were like the claws of wild beasts; these served them instead of knives to divide their fish, and other substances, or even wood

¹ This is a singular instance of ancient artillery being employed on board a ship: the effect is the

same as that of Captain Cook's great guns upon the New Zealanders.

τὰ δὲ ἄλλα τοῖς λίθοις τοῖσιν ἐξέειν
ἐκποίη. Σίδηρος γὰρ αὐτοῖσιν οὐκ ἦν.
Ἐοθῆτα δὲ ἐφόρειν δερμάτα θήρηα· οἱ
δὲ καὶ ἰχθύων τῶν μεγάλων τὰ παχέα.

XXV. Ἐνταῦθα νεωλκῆσι τὰς νέας,
καὶ ὅσαι πεπονηκυῖαι αὐτῶν ἐπισκευάζεσι.
Τῇ δὲ ἕκτῃ ἡμέρῃ ἐτέλλοντο· καὶ πλω-
σαντες σαδίας ἐς τριηκοσίας, ἀφικνέονται
ἐς χώραν, ὅς δὲ ἐχάτος ἦν τῆς Ὀρεπῶν
γῆς. Μάλανα τῷ χωρῷ ὄνομα. Ὀρεπ-
ται δὲ ὅσοι ἄνω ἀπὸ θαλάσσης οἰκεῖσιν,
ἐσαλμένοι μὲν κατὰ περὶ Ἰνδοῖ, εἰσὶ, καὶ
τὰ ἐς πόλεμον ὡσαύτως παραρτέονται·
γλῶσσα δὲ ἄλλη αὐτοῖσι καὶ ἄλλα νό-
μα. Μῆκος τῆς παράπλευ, παρὰ μὲν
χώραν τὴν Ἀραβίαν, ἐς χιλίας μάλιστα
σαδίας, ἔνθεν περὶ ὠρμήθησαν, παρὰ δὲ
τὴν Ὀρεπῶν γῆν, ἐξακόσιοι καὶ χίλιοι.
Παραπλέοντων δὲ τὴν Ἰνδῶν γῆν (τὸ ἐν-
τεῦθεν γὰρ ἐκείνῃ Ἰνδοῖ εἰσι) λέγει Νεάρχ-
χος ὅτι αἱ σκιαὶ αὐτοῖσιν οὐ ταυτὸ ἐποί-
εον· ἀλλὰ ὅπως μὲν ἐπὶ πολὺ τῆς πόντου
ὡς πρὸς μεσημβρίην προχωρήσαν, ὥστε
καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ σκιαὶ πρὸς μεσημβρίην τε-
τραμμέναι ἐφάνοντο. Ὅποτε δὲ τὸ μέ-
σον τῆς ἡμέρας ἐπέχει ὁ ἥλιος, ἤδη δὲ καὶ
ἔρημα σκιῆς πάντα ὥφθη αὐτοῖσι. Τῶν
τε ἀστέρων ὅσους πρόθεν μετεώρους κατ-
εώρων, οἱ μὲν ἀφανέες πάντα ἦσαν· οἱ
δὲ, πρὸς αὐτῇ τῇ γῇ ἐφάνοντο. Κατα-
δύνοντές τε καὶ αὐτίκα ἀνατέλλοντες, οἱ

of the softer sort. Their only instruments
besides were of stone, for iron they had
none. Their clothing consisted of the
skins of beasts, or the larger kind of fish,
when thick enough for the purpose.

XXV. At the Tomérus the vessels were
all drawn on shore, and those that had
suffered in the voyage were repaired. Five
days were employed in this service; on
the sixth the fleet weighed, and proceeded
three hundred stadia to Málana, which
bounds the territory of the Oritæ. Of
this tribe those who live inland are armed
and habited after the Indian fashion; but
their language, manners, and customs are
different. At Málana the course of the
navigation amounted to 2600 stadia; that
is, 1600 along the coast of the Arabies,
and 1000 along that of the Oritæ: and
so far the country is considered as India.
During this passage from the Indus, Ne-
archus notices the "variation of the sha-
dow"; for he says, that upon standing out
to sea, at a considerable distance south
from the coast, the shadows no longer fell
to the north, but to the south; and that
at noon they saw no shadow at all. The
constellations also, which with us appear
elevated considerably, were some of them
altogether invisible; while others barely
showed themselves above the horizon, set-
ting and rising again almost immediately,
instead of exhibiting a constant light. In

Moran
Maran.

* See this circumstance discussed in the Voyage
of Nearchus, p. 221.

* Ὡφθη αὐτοῖσι is so positive, that I cannot get
rid of it. Schneider imputes the error to Arrian;
he excuses Nearchus, and condemns me for mak-

ing him partaker in the assertion. I request the
reader to examine the preceding narrative, and
judge, whether Nearchus at any one time did or
could stand out to sea so far as to verify this phe-
nomenon.

πάλα ἀειφανέες ὄντες· καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἀπεικότα δοκεῖ μοι ἀναγράφαι Νέαρχος. Ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐν Σύνῃ τῇ Αἰγυπλίῃ, ἐπεὶ τὴν τροπὰς ἄγῃ θέρους ὥρης ὁ ἥλιος, φρεῖαρ ἀποδεδεγμένον ἐστὶ, καὶ τῷτο ἄσκιον ἐν μεσημβρίῃ φαίνεται· ἐν Μέρῳ δὲ πάντα ἄσκια τῇ αὐτῇ ὥρῃ· εἰκὸς ὦν καὶ ἐν Ἰνδοῖσιν, ἅτε πρὸς μεσημβρίην ὠκισμένοις, τὰ αὐτὰ δὴ πάθῃα ἐπέχεν· καὶ μάλιστα δὴ κατὰ τὸν πόντον τὸν Ἰνδικόν, ὅσω μᾶλλον αὐτοῖσιν ἢ θάλασσα πρὸς μεσημβρίην κέκλυται. Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ὧδε ἐχέτω.

XXVI. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ὀρήτησι κατὰ μὲν μεσσημῖαν Γαδρωῖται ἐπέχον· ὦν τὴν χώραν χαλεπῶς διεξῆλθεν ἅμα τῇ στρατῇ Ἀλέξανδρος. Καὶ κακὰ τοσαῦτα ἔπαθεν, ὅσα ἐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα τῆς συμπαύσης στρατηλασίης. Καὶ ταῦτά μοι ἐν τῇ μέζῳ συγγραφῇ ἀναγεγραπταί. Κάτω δὲ Γαδρωῖται, παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν αὐτὴν, οἱ Ἰκθυοφάγοι καλούμενοι οἰκοῦσι. Παρὰ τῶν τὴν γῆν ἔπλεον, τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρῃ περὶ τὴν δευτέραν φυλακὴν ἀναχθέντες, καταύρυσιν εἰς Βαγίσαρα· σταδίοι τῷ παράπλῃ ἑξακόσιοι· λιμὴν τε ἐν αὐτόθι εὖρομος, καὶ κώμη Πασίρα, ἀπέχουσα ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἑξήκοντα σταδίας. Καὶ οἱ πρόσκοι αὐτῆς Πασιρέες.

this account Nearchus seems to say nothing but what is rational; for at Syênè in Egypt, when the sun arrives at the summer solstice, there is a well shewn, which is without a shadow at noon: and in the same season at Méroë the same phenomenon is universal. So that it is reasonable to imagine that the same circumstance takes place in the southern part of India, or more especially on the ocean, which is more southern still. But of this sufficient.

XXVI. Westward of the Orítæ, the Gadrosians possess the country inland. In passing this tract with his army, Alexander experienced greater distress than any which he had suffered in the whole course of his expedition. But the account of this has been given in my former work.

On the coast they are not Gadrosians, but Ikthuthóphagi, [so called from living almost wholly upon *fish*:] and along their territory the fleet, after weighing late in the evening, accomplished a course of six hundred stadia to Bagafira. Here there was a safe port, and a village, sixty stadia inland, called ^z Pasíra; and the natives

^γ In the word Syênè the geographer may observe the use that might be derived from preserving the original sound of Greek elements. Syênè would be pronounced Suana; and the actual name at present is As-Souan. How many oriental names might be rescued from obscurity by this simple practice, cannot be determined; but I always regret the necessity of complying with modern usage,

in order to avoid the charge of affectation and singularity.

^z Ba Gafira is evidently an Arabic compound of Gafira, Gezira, which signifies an island, and likewise a peninsula, cape, or promontory. The cape here is still called Arrhabah, Arrhubah and Araba retaining a memorial of the Arabs in the adjoining districts.

Ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑπεραίαν πρῶτον τῆς ὥρης ἀναχθέντες, περιπλέυσιν ἄκρην ἐπὶ πολὺ τε ἀνέχουσαν ἐς τὸν πόντον, καὶ αὐτὴν ὑψηλὴν καὶ κρημνωδία· Φρέατα δὲ ὀρύξαντες, ὕδωρ ἐκ ὀλίγον καὶ πονηρὸν ἀρυσάμενοι, ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρῃ ἐπὶ ἀγκυρῶν ὥρμων, ὅτι ῥηχέη κατὰ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν ἀνέχεν. Ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑπεραίαν καταίρουσιν ἐς Κόλτα, σαδίης ἐλθόντες διηκοσίης. Ἐνθεν δὲ ἔωθεν πλεύσαντες σαδίης ἑξακοσίης, ἐν ² Καλάμοισιν ὁρμίζονται· κώμη πρὸς τῷ αἰγιαλῷ· Φοίνικες δὲ περὶ αὐτὴν ὀλίγοι πεφύκεσαν, καὶ βάλανοι ἐπ' αὐτοῖσι χλωραὶ ἐπήσαν. Καὶ νῆσος ὡς ἑκατὸν σαδίης ἀπὸ τῆς αἰγιαλῆς ἀπέχουσα, ³ Καρινὴ ὄνομα. Ἐνταῦθα ξένια νεάρχω προσφέρουσιν οἱ κωμηταί, πρόβατα καὶ ἰχθύας. Καὶ τῶν προβάτων τὰ κρέα λέγουσι ὅτι ἦν ἰχθυώδεια, ὡς τὰ τῶν ὀρνίθων τῆς πελαγίῳ, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὰ ἰχθύων σιτέσθαι· πῶς γὰρ ἐκ ἐνὶ ἐν τῇ χώρῃ. Ἀλλὰ τῇ ὑπεραίῃ πλεύσαντες ἐς σαδίης διηκοσίης, ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ καὶ κώμῃ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς σαδίης τριήκοντα ἀπέχουσα. Ἡ μὲν κώμη Κύσα ἑκαλέετο· Καρβίς δὲ τῷ αἰγιαλῷ ὄνομα ἦν. Ἐνταῦθα πλοίοισιν ἐπιτυχάνουσι σμικροῖσιν, οἷα ἀλιέων εἶναι πλοῖα ἐκ εὐδαιμόνων. Αὐτὰς δὲ οὐ καταλαμβάνουσιν· ἀλλ' ἔφυγον γὰρ καθορμιζομένας κατιδόντες τὰ νέας. Σπίός τε αὐτῶν ἐκ ἐνῆν, καὶ ὑπολελέσθη τὴν στρατὴν ὁ πολ-

of the neighbourhood Pafireans. Weighing from hence at an early hour the next morning, they doubled a cape which projected far out into the sea, bluff and lofty; ^{Cape Ar-rhabah.} when they came to an anchor in an open road, as a surf beat violently on the coast. Here they remained all that day, and, by sinking pits upon the shore, obtained water in abundance, but it was bad. The day following, after a course of two hundred stadia, they reached Kolta. From Kolta, six hundred stadia brought them to Kálama; it was a village with a few palm trees about it, but their fruit was not ripe: and off shore, at the distance of one hundred stadia, lay an island called Kaninè. ^{Ashola.}

The inhabitants, however, were hospitable; they brought down fish and sheep; but the very mutton was fishy, like the flesh of sea fowl, and the sheep were fed upon fish: for grafs there was none in the country.

The following day they advanced only two hundred stadia, anchoring in an open road of the name of Karbis, where there was a village called Kufa, thirty stadia from the shore. They here found a few ^a boats, the property apparently of miserable fishermen; but the owners did not appear, for they had fled upon sight of the fleet anchoring.

Search was here made for bread corn, but none found; and the people were in distress, having nearly consumed all they had [received from Leonnátus.] A few

² The best Florentine MS. reads Καλίμοισιν for Καλάμοισιν, and Καρινὴ for Καρινή. The first is certainly not a preferable reading; the second may be indifferent.

^a This is the first notice of any sort of vessel on the coast, and it is immediately succeeded by a pilot.

λός· ἀλλὰ αἶγας ἐμβαλλόμενοι ἐς τὰς νέας, ἔτω δὴ ἀπέπλεον. Καὶ περιπλάσαντες ἄκρην ὑψηλὴν, ὅσον πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν σταδίους ἀνέχουσαν ἐς τὸν πόντον, κατὰγονται ἐν λιμένι ἀκλύτῳ. Καὶ ὕδωρ αὐτοῖσι ἦν, καὶ ἀλιεῖς ὥκειον· Μόσαρνα ὄνομα ἦν τῷ λιμένι.

XXVII. Ἐνθεν δὲ καὶ ἡγεμὼν τῷ πλόῳ λέγει Νεάρχος ὅτι συνέπλωσεν αὐτοῖσιν, Ὑδράκης ὄνομα, Γαδρῆσιος. Ὑπέρη δὲ Ὑδράκης καλαστήσειν αὐτὰς μέχρι Καρμανίης. Τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τῆδε ἔκτετι χαλεπὰ ἦν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον τι ὀνομαζόμενα, ἐς τε ἐπὶ τὸν κάλπον τὸν Περσικόν. Ἐκ δὲ Μοσαρῶν νυκτὸς ἐπάραντες, πλώσσι σταδίους ἑπτακοσίους καὶ πεντήκοντα, ἐς Βάλωμον αἰγιαλόν. Ἐνθεν δὲ ἐς Βάρνα κώμην, σταδίους τετρακοσίους, ἵνα Φοινίκες τε πολλοὶ ἐνῆσαν, καὶ κῆπος. Καὶ ἐν τῷ κήπῳ μυρρίνας ἐπεφύκεσαν, καὶ ἄλλα ἄνθη, ἀφ' ὧν σεφανώματα τῆσι κώμῃσι ἐπλέκοντο. Ἐνταῦθα πρῶτον δένδρεά τε εἶδον ἡμερᾶ, καὶ ἀνθρώπους οὐ πάντη θηριώδεις ἐπωκέοντας. Ἐνθένδε ἐς διακοσίους σταδίους περιπλώσαντες, κατὰρυσιν ἐς Δενδρόβοσα· καὶ αἱ νέες ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων ἐσάλευσαν. Ἐνθένδε ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας ἄραγες ἐς Κώφανία λιμένα ἀφίκοντο, τετρακοσίους μάλιστα σταδίους διεπλώσαντες. Ἐνταῦθα ἀλιεῖς τε ὥκειον, καὶ πλοῖα αὐτοῖσιν ἦν μικρὰ καὶ

goats they seized, and, carrying them on board, proceeded to double a promontory which projected one hundred and fifty stadia into the sea: which having accomplished, they anchored in a secure harbour, where they found water, and inhabitants, who were fishermen. The place was called Mosarna.

XXVII. At Mosarna was procured a pilot of the name of Hudrákes [or the Hudrákian, from a place of that name on the coast.] This man promised to conduct the fleet to Karmánia; and in fact the navigation from Mosarna to the gulph of Persia was ^b better known, and less dangerous, than what they had already passed. From Mosarna they sailed at night seven hundred and fifty ^c stadia to the road of Balómus; and thence four hundred stadia to Barna, a village where they found palm trees and a cultivated garden. In this garden were myrtles, which the seamen wreathed into chaplets for their heads. This was the first instance of culture, and the inhabitants were not quite so savage as those they had seen before. From hence two hundred stadia brought them to Dendróbosa, where they rode at anchor; and, weighing again at midnight, reached the port of Kóphas, Guadel? after a course of four hundred stadia. Here fishermen were found, who had small and wretched boats, in which the

^b μᾶλλον τι ὀνομαζόμενα. A desert coast, undiscovered, has no name till one is given to it by those who visit it first. Schneider renders it *prior celebris*.

^c Seven hundred and fifty stadia for the first time, because a pilot was on board, who knew that the land breeze blew during the night.

ποιηρά. Καὶ ταῖς κώπαις οὐ κατὰ σκαλμὸν ἤρρεσσον (ὡς ὁ Ἑλλήνων νόμος) ἀλλ' ὥσπερ ἐν ποταμῷ τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπιβάλλοντες ἔνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν, κατὰπερ οἱ σκάπτοντες τὴν γῆν. Ἐδωρ δὲ πολὺ τε ἦν ἐν τῷ λιμένι, καὶ καθαρόν. Περὶ δὲ πρώτην φυλακὴν ἀρανῖες, καταίρυσιν ἐς Κιδζα, ἐς ὀκτακοσίας σταδίους διεκπλώσαντες ἵνα αἰγιαλὸς τε ἔρημος ἦν, καὶ ῥαχίη. Αὐτοὶ ὦν ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων ὤρμεον, κατὰ νέαν τε δειπνὸν ἐποιέοντο. Ἐνθενδε διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους πεντακοσίους, ἀπίκοντο ἐς τινα πόλιν μικρὴν οἰκουμένην ἐπὶ γηλόφῳ, οὐ πόρρω τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. Καὶ Νέαρχος ἐπιφραδῆς ὅτι σπέρεσθαι τὴν χώραν εἰκός, λέγει πρὸς Ἀρχίην (ὃς ἦν Ἀναξιδότου μὲν παῖς, Πελλαῖος, συνέπλει δὲ Νεάρχῳ, τῶν ἐν αἰῶνι Μακεδόνων) πρὸς τῶτον λέγει, ὅτι καταληπίσον σφίσιν ἔσθαι τὸ χωρίον ἐκόντας τε γὰρ ἔκ αὐτῶν αἰεῖσθαι δεῖναι τῇ στρατῇ σιτία· βίη τε ἔχουσιν οἷον τε εἶναι ἐξαίρετον, πολιορκίης δὲ καὶ τριβῆς δεήσει· σφᾶς δὲ ἐπιλοιοπύειν τὰ σιτία· ὅτι δὲ ἡ γῆ σιτοφόρος τῇ καλᾷ μετεωριῶσθαι, ἥντινα οὐ πόρρω τῷ αἰγιαλῷ ἀφείρων βαθέην. Ταῦτα ἐπεὶ σφίσιν ἐδόκει, τὰς μὲν ἄλλας νέας κελεύει παραρτῆσθαι ὡς ἐς πλόον. Καὶ ὁ Ἀρχίας αὐτῷ ἐξήρτυε τὰ ἐς τὸν πλόον. Αὐτὸς δὲ ὑπε-

doars were not fastened to the rowlocks, as in Greek vessels, [but held in the hand,] so that they seemed to dig the water rather than row, and to toss it up as a labourer throws up earth with a spade. This harbour afforded good water in plenty. Weighing again, however, in the evening, they proceeded eight hundred stadia to Kuidza, where the shore was desert and shoal. Here they anchored in an open road, and took their meal on board without landing; but necessity compelled them to proceed: they advanced therefore to a small town, built upon a rising ground. Here [from some appearances] Nearchus judged that agriculture was not wholly unknown. The produce he determined to appropriate, and for that purpose consulted Archias how to effect it. This Archias was a man of consideration among the Macedonians; he was of Pella, the son of Anaxidotus, and had sailed with a command under the admiral. Nearchus told him he was determined to seize the place by surprise, because he was persuaded the natives would not, without force, consent to afford them a supply; and that to take the place by force would require the delay of a siege; that immediate relief must be had, for they had no bread corn left: and that there had been a harvest in the country was evident from the stubble, which stood thick within sight from the shore. Archias joined with his commander in opinion; and it was immediately resolved that the fleet should be made ready for sailing under Archias, and that Nearchus, with a single ship, should remain, and ap-

Khudar
Guttar.

^d This manner of rowing is still practised in Siam, Ava, &c. but is best represented by the engraving of a New Zealand canoe, in Cook's second voyage. The blade of the oar is there more like a spade

than an oar.

^e κατὰ πρώτην φυλακὴν, six o'clock.

^f δεῖπνον. If supper, they sailed again in the evening.

λαφθῆναι μετὰ μίης νεώς, ἐπὶ θῆαν δὴ-
θεν τ' πόλιος ἦν.

XXVIII. Προσάγοντι δὲ αὐτῷ πρὸς
τὰ τέχια Φιλίως, ξένια ἔφερον ἐκ τῆς
πόλιος, θύνας τε ἐν κριθάνοισιν ὀπίθας
(ἔτοι γὰρ ἔχοντο τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων οἰ-
κέοντες πρῶτοι αὐτῶσιν ἄφθησαν, ἐκ
αἰμοφαγέοντες) καὶ πέμματα ὀλίγα, καὶ
βαλάνους τῶν Φοινίκων. Ὁ δὲ ταῦτα
μὲν ἀσμένως δέκεσθαι ἔφη, ἐθέλειν δὲ
θεήσασθαι τὴν πόλιν· οἱ δὲ ἔων παρελ-
θῶν. Ὡς δὲ εἰσω πυλῶν παρήλθε, δύο
μὲν τῶν τοξοτῶν κατέχεν κελύει τὴν πυ-
λίδα. Αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ δύο ἄλλων, καὶ τῷ
ἐρμηνέως, ἐπὶ τὸ τείχος τὸ ταύτῃ ἀνελ-
θῶν, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς ἀμφὶ τὸν Ἀρχίην ὅπως
συνέκετο· τὸν μὲν ἂν σημήναι, τὸν δὲ
συμβολοῖα ποιεῖν τὸ τεύαγμένον. Ἰδόν-
τες δὲ τὸ σημήιον οἱ Μακεδόνες, ἐπώ-
κελλον τε καὶ τὰχος τὰς νέας, καὶ ἐξε-
πήδων σπαδῇ εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν. Οἱ δὲ
βάρβαροι ἐκπλαγέτες τοῖς γινόμενοις,
ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἔθεν. Ὁ δὲ ἐρμηνεύς ὁ
σὺν Νεάρχῳ, ἐκήρυσε σῆτον διδόναι τῇ
στρατιῇ, εἰ σώαν ἐθέλωσιν ἔχειν τὴν πό-
λιν· οἱ δὲ ἠνέκτο ἔναι σφίσι, καὶ ἅμα
προσέβαλον τῷ τείχει. Ἀλλὰ ἀνέτελον
αὐτὰς οἱ τοξοταὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Νεάρχον,
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίᾳ τοξεύοντες. Ὡς δὲ ἔμαθον
ἐχομένην τε ἡδὴ καὶ ὅσον ἔπει ἀνδραπο-
διοησομένην σφίσι τὴν πόλιν, τότε δὲ δὴ
ἰδέοντο τῷ Νεάρχῳ, τὸν μὲν σῆτον ὅσπερ
ἦν αὐταῖσιν λαβόντα ἀπάγειν, τὴν πόλιν
δὲ μὴ διαφθεῖρειν. Νεάρχος δὲ τὸν μὲν
Ἀρχίην κελύει καταλαβεῖν τὰς πύλας,
καὶ τὸ κατ' αὐτὰς τείχος· αὐτὸς ᾧ συμ-

ply to the natives on shore for leave to
visit their city.

XXVIII. He approached therefore
with his single ship in a friendly manner,
and the people came out of the place with
presents in their hands, of cakes, dates,
and baked fish. Even this was a test of
civilization, for these were the first they
had yet seen on the coast, who applied
any cookery to their food. The presents
Nearchus received with the appearance
of pleasure, and requested the favour of
being permitted to see their city. To this
they made no objection; but he, the mo-
ment he had entered, ordered two of his
bowmen to guard the gate, and then
mounting the wall with two others and
his interpreter, he made the signal to
Archias, which had been agreed upon.
The signal was no sooner made than un-
derstood; when Archias ordered the ships
now under weigh to fall back towards
the shore, and the people to plunge into
the sea on the instant. The natives ran
to arms, astonished at what they saw;
when Nearchus ordered his interpreter
to proclaim that no injury was intend-
ed, but that they must deliver up all
the bread corn in their possession. They
declared they had none, and still conti-
nued to approach the wall, where the
bowmen were placed; but the bowmen
defended themselves by the advantage of
their position, and [Archias likewise was
at hand.] Finding therefore opposition
vain, and fearing lest their city might be
sacked as well as taken, and themselves
carried off into slavery, they entreated
Nearchus to take what corn they had,
and depart without farther injury to their
city. Upon this Nearchus ordered Ar-
chias to occupy the gates and the ad-
joining walls, while he sent proper peo-

πέμπει τὰς κατοχομένους τὸν σῖτον, εἰ ἀδολῶς δεικνύουσιν. Οἱ δὲ, τὸ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων τῶν ὀπλῶν ἀληλεσμένον ἄλευρον πολὺ ἐδείκνυσαν, πυρὸς δὲ καὶ κριθὰς ὀλίγας. Καὶ ᾧ καὶ ἐτύγχανον σίτω μὲν τῷ ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων, τοῖσι δὲ ἄρτοισιν ὅσα ὄψω διαχρέμενοι. Ὡς δὲ τὰ ὄντα ἐπεδείκνυσαν, ἔτω δὴ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἐπισιτισάμενοι ἀνήγοντο, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς ἄκρην ἣντινα οἱ ἐπιχώριοι ἰρὴν ἡλίε ἦγον· ἔνομα τῇ ἄκρῃ Βάγεια.

XXIX. Ἐνθενδὲ ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας ἄραντες, διεκπλώσσι σταδίους ἐς χιλίους, ἐς Τάλμενα λιμένα εὖορμον. Ἐνθενδὲ ἐς Κανασίδα πόλιν ἐρήμην, σταδίους ἐς τετρακοσίους· ἵνα τινὶ Φρέατι ὀρυκτῶ ἐπιτυγχάνωσι. Καὶ Φοίνικες ἄγριοι ἐπεφύκεσαν, τῶν τὰς ἐγκεφάλους κόπτοντες, ἐσιτέοντο· σῖτος γὰρ ἐπιλελοίπει τὴν στατήν· καὶ κακῶς ἦδη ὑπὸ λιμῆ ἔχοντες, ἔπλεον, τὴν τε ἡμέρην καὶ τὴν νύκτα, καὶ ὁρμίζονται πρὸς αἰγιαλῷ ἐρήμῳ. Νεάρχος δὲ καταδύσας μὴ ἄρα ἐς τὴν γῆν ἐκδάντες ἀπολίποιν τὰς νέας ὑπὸ ἀδυμίας, ἐπὶ τῷδε μετεώρῳ ἔχε τὰς νέας ἐπ' ἀγκυράων. Ἐνθενδὲ ἀναχθέντες, ἐς Κανάτην ὁρμίζονται, σταδίους ὡς ἐπτακοσίους καὶ πεντήκοντα διεκπλώσαντες. Ἐς δὲ καὶ αἰγιαλὸς ἐν αὐτῷ, καὶ διώρυχες βραχεῖαι. Ἐνθενδὲ σταδίους ὀκτακοσίους πλώσαντες, ἐν Τροῖσιν ὁρμίζονται. Κῶμαι δὲ μικραὶ καὶ πονηραὶ ἐπῆσαν· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄνθρωποι ἐκλείπασιν τὰ οἰκῆα,

ple with the inhabitants to see that they delivered up their stores without fraud. When the stores were opened, a great quantity was found of a paste composed of fish baked and salted, but of wheat and barley the supply was very scanty; for the custom of the country is to consider fish as the staff of life, and bread as an article of luxury. All that was discovered however was delivered up by the inhabitants, and Nearchus, contenting himself with what he found, abstained from farther injury, and ordered the fleet off to a cape called Bageia, which is sacred to the sun.

XXIX. From Bageia the fleet weighed at midnight, and advanced 1000 stadia to Tálmena, a safe harbour; and from thence 400 stadia farther to Kanásida, a deserted ^{Tiz?} city, where they found a well sunk, and ^{Tidge?} some wild palm trees; from these they cut off the head shoot [which is called the Cabbage] and ate it in place of bread, for of bread they had none left. Famine began now to threaten, and they were forced to proceed for the following day and night without anchoring, and stopped at last on a desert shore.

Here Nearchus was obliged to anchor without suffering the men to land, fearing that, if they set foot on shore, they would not return on board. From hence 750 stadia carried them to Kánatè, where the Tancabanca shore was low with shallow cuts: then 800 stadia to Troëa, where there were a few wretched villages, which the inhabitants had deserted; but dates and a small

¹ Τροῖσιν is a dubious reading in all the MSS. sometimes written Τάοισιν, and by Gronovius Ἰροῖσιν, conjectural.

αὐτοὶ δὲ σίτω τινὶ ὀλίγῳ ἐπιτυχάνουσι, καὶ βαλάνοις ἐκ Φοινίκων καὶ καμήλας ἑπτὰ ὅσαι ἐγκατελείφθησαν κατακόψαντες, ἀπὸ τῶν τὰ κρέα ἐσπένοντο. Ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἑὴ ἀναχθέντες σάδις τριακοσίαις πλώσσι, καὶ καθορμίζονται ἐς Δαγάσειρα· ἐνθα νομάδες τινὲς ἀνθρώποι ὤκειον. Ἐνθεν δὲ ἄραντες, τὴν τε νύκτα καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν, ἔδεν τι ἐλινύοντες ἔπλεον. Ἀλλὰ διελθόντες γὰρ σάδις χιλίαι τε καὶ ἑκατὸν, ἐξέπλωσαν τὸ ἔθνος τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων, πολλὰ κακὰ ταύτη παθόντες ἀπορίῃ τῶν ἀναγκαίων. Ὁρμίζονται δὲ οὐ πρὸς τῇ γῇ. Ῥηχίη γὰρ ἦν ἐπὶ πολλὸν ἀνέχουσα, ἀλλὰ μετέωροι ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων. Μῆκος τὴν παράπλευ τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τῆς χώρας ὀλίγῳ πλεόνες σάδιοι μύριοι. Οὗτοι δὲ οἱ Ἰχθυοφάγοι σπένονται (κατότι περ καὶ κληίζονται) ἰχθύας. Ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἀλιεύοντες τὰς ἰχθύας. Ὀλίγοισι γὰρ καὶ πλοῖα ἐπὶ τῷδε πεποιήται, καὶ τέχνη ἐξεύρηται ἐπὶ τῇ θύρῃ τῶν ἰχθύων· τὸ πολὺ δὲ ἡ ἀνάπτεις αὐτοῖσι παρέχει. Οἱ δὲ καὶ δίκτυα ἐπὶ τῷδε πεποιήται, μέγεθος καὶ ἐς δύο σάδις τὰ πολλὰ αὐτῶν. Πλεκτοὶ δὲ αὐτὰ ἐκ τῶν Φλοιῶν τῶν Φοινίκων, στρέφοντες τὸ Φλοιὸν ὥσπερ λίνον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ θάλασσα ὑπονοσῆση, καὶ γῆ ὑπολείφθῃ, ἵνα μὲν ξηρὴ ἡ γῆ ὑπολείπεται, ἐρήμη τὸ πολὺ ἐστὶν ἰχθύων· ἐνθα δὲ βα-

quantity of corn was found. Seven camels were likewise discovered, which the natives had not driven off: these they killed and ate. Setting sail again in the morning, they reached Dagasira, a residence of some straggling natives, where they obtained nothing, and were necessitated to proceed all night and the following day, till at the end of 1100 stadia they arrived at the limit of the territory of the Ikththúphagi under the extremity of distress. Yet even here they were not able to land, but were forced to ride at anchor on an open coast, for there was a surf of great extent, which beat upon a cape projecting far out from the main. Koelat? Gazira a cape. Cape Jaik.

The whole navigation along this coast of the Ikththúphagi was somewhat more than 510,000 stadia, throughout which, as their name implies, the natives have little else to support life but fish; and yet, notwithstanding this, few of them are fishermen or have boats, or understand fishery as an art. But their supply is obtained by observing the tide of ebb, when they stretch out nets two stadia in length upon the shore, and wait the retreat of the water. These nets are formed out of the bark of the [Cocoa] Palm Tree, for they spin the bark like flax. As the tide ebbs, where the shore is left dry, there are no fish; but in many places the water

3 The stadia enumerated are 9000, and several omissions may well make up the number ten thousand.

stadia

10000 at 16 to a mile English = 625.

10000 at 15 to a mile Roman = 666.

10000 at 8 to a mile Roman = 1250.

real extent of the coast = 486.

See Voyage of Nearchus p. 288. second edit.

Θέα ἐστὶν, ὑπολέπεται τι τῷ ὕδατος, καὶ ἐν τῷδε κάρτα πολλοὶ ἰχθύες. Οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ σμικροὶ αὐτῶν, οἱ δὲ καὶ μέζονες. Τέτοις περιβάλλοντες τὰ δίκτυα, αἰρῶσι· σιτέονται δὲ ὡμὰς μὲν, ὅπως ἀναιρῶσιν ἐκ τῷ ὕδατος, τὰς ἀπαλατάτας· τὰς δὲ μέζονας τε καὶ σκληροτέρας, ὑπὸ ἡλίου ἀναίνοντες, εὖτ' ἂν ἀφανανθῶσιν, καταλῶντες ἄλευρα ἀπ' αὐτῶν ποιεῖν καὶ ἄρτους· οἱ δὲ μάζας ἐκ τέτων τῶν ἀλεύρων πῶσσανσι. Καὶ τὰ βοσκήματα αὐτοῖσι τὰς ἰχθύας ξηρὰς σιτέονται. Ἡ γὰρ χώρα ἔρημος λειμώνων, ἐδὲ ποιὴν φέρει. Θηρεύουσι δὲ καὶ καράβιας πολλαχῇ, καὶ ὄστρεα καὶ τὰ κογχύλια. Ἄλιες δὲ αὐτόματοι γίνονται ἐν τῇ χώρῃ· ἀλλ' ἐτέτων ἔλαιον ποιεῖσιν. Οἱ μὲν δὲ αὐτῶν ἐρημὰς τόπους οἰκέουσιν, ἄδενδρον τε τὴν χώραν καὶ ἄφορον καρπῶν ἡμέρων· τέτοισιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθύων ἢ πᾶσα διατὰ πεποιήται. Ὀλίγοι δὲ αὐτῶν σπείρουσιν ὅσον τῆς χώρας, καὶ τέτω κατάπερ ὄψω χρῶνται πρὸς τὰς ἰχθύας· ὁ γὰρ σῖτος αὐτοῖσιν οἱ ἰχθύες. Οἰκία δὲ πεποιήται· οἱ μὲν εὐδαιμονέστατοι αὐτῶν, ὅσα κήτια ἐκβάλλει ἡ θάλασσα, τέτων τὰ ὅσα ἐπιλεγόμενοι, τέτοισιν ἀντὶ ξύλων χρεόμενοι· καὶ θύρας τὰ ὅσα ὅσα πλατεῖα αὐτῶν ἀλίσκεται, ἀπὸ τέτων ποιεῖν. Τοῖσι δὲ πολλοῖσι καὶ πινεσέροισιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀκανθῶν τῶν ἰχθύων τὰ οἰκία ποιεῖται.

XXX. Κήτια δὲ μεγάλα ἐν τῇ ἕξω θαλάσσῃ βόσκεται, καὶ ἰχθύες πολλῶν

stands in pools, and there are quantities of fish, small indeed for the most part, but some large. The small and those of the softer kind they eat raw, as they take them out of the water. The large and hard they dry in the sun, and, when dry, reduce them to a powder like meal, which they knead up into loaves, or mix up in a liquid form like frumenty. Their very cattle likewise are fed with dried fish, for they have neither grafs or pasture. Crabs, Oysters, and other shell fish are found in plenty. Salt is a natural production of the soil, and the ^h thunny fish supplies them with oil.

The generality of this tribe inhabit a country without a tree, without any produce of the field, and live entirely on fish: some few raise a small quantity of grain, which is rather a luxury than their ordinary diet, for their daily food is fish. The houses of the better sort are framed of the bones of whales cast on the shore; these they use instead of timber, and the flat bones for doors. The common people have only the refuse of the smaller bones [piled up] for an habitation.

XXX. Whales are found in the [Indian] ocean, of a much larger bulk than

^h ἀπὸ θύνων is a reading of Schneider's for ἀπὸ τούτων. The passage is undoubtedly corrupt,

and any correction is better than nonsense: but I dare not say the correction is true.

μέζονες ἢ ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἕσσω. Καὶ λέγει Νέαρχος, ὅποτε ἀπὸ Κυϊζων παρέπλεον, ὑπὸ τὴν ἑω ὀφθῆναι ὕδαρ ἄνω ἀναφυσώμενον τῆς θαλάσσης, οἷά περ ἐκ πρηγῆρων βία ἀναφερόμενον. Ἐκπλαγέντας δὲ σφᾶς, πυνθάνεσθαι τῶν κατήγεομένων τῷ πλόῳ ὅ, τι εἴη καὶ ἀπὸ τέττα τὸ πάθημα. Τὸς δὲ ὑποκρίνασθαι ὅτι κήτεα ταῦτα φερόμενά κατὰ τὸν πόντον ἀναφυσᾷ ἐς τὸ ἄνω τὸ ὕδωρ. Καὶ τοῖσι ναύτησιν ἐκπλαγῆσιν ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν τὰ ἔρετμὰ ἐκπεσόν· αὐτοὺς δὲ ἐπιὼν παρακαλῆν τε καὶ θαρσύνειν. Καὶ κατ' ἕστινας παραπλέων ἐγένετο, ἐς μέτωπόν τε κελεύσαι καταστῆσαι ὡς ἐπὶ ναυμαχίαν τὰς νέας, καὶ ἐπαλαλάζοντας ὁμῶς τῷ ῥοθίῳ, πυκνὴν τε καὶ ὀξείαν ἡ κτύπῳ πολλῷ τὴν εἰρεσίην ποιέεσθαι. Οὕτως ἀναθαρσύναντας ὁμῶς δὴ πλέειν ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος. Ὡς δὲ ἐπέλαζον ἤδη τοῖσι θηρίοισιν, ἐπαυῖθα αὐτοὺς μὲν ὅσον αἱ κεφαλὰὶ αὐτοῖσιν ἐχώρειν ἐπαλαλάξαι· τὰς δὲ σάλπιγγας σημήναι, καὶ τὸν κτύπον ἀπὸ τῆς εἰρεσίας ὡς ἐπὶ μήκισον καταχεῖν. Οὕτω δὲ ὁρώμενα ἤδη κατὰ τὰς πρῶρας τῶν νεῶν τὰ κήτεα, ἐς βυθὸν δύναι ἐκπλαγέντα, καὶ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον κατὰ τὰς πρῶμνας ἀναδύντα ἀναχεῖν, καὶ τῆς θαλάσσης αὐτίς ἀναφυσῆσαι ἐπὶ μέγα. Ἐνθεν κρότους τε ἐπὶ

those in the Mediterranean. For Nearchus relates, that, as the fleet passed Kuidza, the water was seen thrown up to ^{Khudar} a great height, as if it had been raised ^{Guttar.} like a water spout; and that, upon this strange appearance, they were alarmed, and enquired of the native pilots what might be the cause of this occurrence. They received for answer, that it proceeded from whales sporting in the water, and blowing it up from their nostrils. The seamen however were so astonished, that the oars dropt from their hands. Nearchus immediately ran up through the fleet with his own ship, and, as he passed, directed the commanders to form a line with their head towards the monsters, as if they were going to engage; at the same time ordering the people to raise the shout of war with all their force, to exert their strength to the utmost, and to dash the waves violently with their oars: upon this they recovered from their alarm, and advanced upon the signal as if going into an actual engagement. And now at the moment when they were close to the enemy, the clamour of the crews was carried to its highest pitch, the trumpets sounded the charge, and the dashing of the oars resounded on every side: upon this the monsters seen ahead plunged into the deep as if frightened by the attack, and rising again astern, continued to blow as magnificently as before. The danger was past, the seamen shouted

¹ Τι εἴη καὶ ἀπὸ τέττα τὸ πάθημα. The primitive sense of πάθημα is *casus*, or accident; that is, every occurrence or circumstance which originates from another person or thing, and of which we ourselves are the object. Hence every impression on the mind, all sufferings, all the passions, are

παθήματα. The πάθημα in this passage is the *alarm* caused by the blowing of the whales; and if we obtain the true sense in this instance, it will explain a much disputed text in the following chapter.

² ξὺν Schneider, ex optimo.

τῇ παραλόγῳ σωτηρίᾳ γενέσθαι τῶν ναυ-
τέων, καὶ αἶνον εἰς τὸν Νεάρχον τῆς τε
τόλμης καὶ τῆς σοφίης. Τάτων μετεξ-
έτερα τῶν κητέων ἐποκέλλειν πολλαχῶς
τῆς χώρας, ἐπειδὴν ἀνάπαυτις κατάσκη ἐν
τοῖσι βράχεσιν ἐχόμενα· τὰ δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ
χειμῶνων σκληρῶν εἰς τὴν χερσον ἐξωθέε-
σθαι. Καὶ ἔτω δὴ καὶ τὰ σπηόμενα,
ἀπόλλυσθαι τε, καὶ τὰς σάρκας αὐτοῖσι
περιρρέουσας ὑπολέπειν τὰ ὀστέα χρῆσθαι
τοῖσιν ἀνθρώποισιν εἰς τὰ οἰκία. Εἴ-
ναι ὧν τὰ μὲν ἐν τῇσι πλευρήσιν αὐτῶν
ὀστέα, δοκὺς τοῖσιν οἰκήμασιν ὅσα με-
γάλα. Τὰ δὲ μικρότερα, στρωτήρας· τὰ
δὲ ἐν τῇσι σιαγούσι, ταῦτα δὲ εἶναι τὰ
θύρετρα. Οἷα δὴ πολλῶν καὶ εἰς ἑκατο-
ς πέντε ὀργυίας ἀνηκόντων τὸ μέγεθος.

XXXI. Εὐτ' ἂν δὲ παρέπλεον τὴν χώ-
ρην τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων, λόγον ἀκούσιν
περὶ νῆσου τιῆς, ἣ κείται μὲν ἀπέχουσα
τῆς ταύτης ἡπείρου σαδίας εἰς ἑκατόν, ἐρήμη
δὲ εἰς οἰκητόρων. Ταύτην ἱρὴν ἡλίς ἐλε-
γον εἶναι οἱ ἐπιχώριοι, καὶ Νόσαλα κα-
λεῖσθαι· ἐδὲ τινα ἀνθρώπων καταίρειν
εἰθέλειν εἰς αὐτήν· ὅστις δ' ἂν ἀπειρήνῃ
προσῇ, γίνεσθαι ἀφανέα. Ἀλλὰ λέγει
Νεάρχος, κέρκερον σφιν εἶνα πλήρωμα
ἔχοντα Αἰγυπτίων, οὐ πόρρω τῆς νήσου
ταύτης γενέσθαι ἀφανέα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν
τῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶ πλόος διῶχουρίζεσθαι,

and clapped their hands upon their un-
expected deliverance, and the judgement
of Nearchus was as much their admira-
tion as his fortitude.

Some of these whales are often left
dry on the reflux of the tide, and some
are driven on shore by storms. In this
state they lie and putrefy till the flesh
separates from the bones, which the na-
tives employ in building their houses.
Those taken out of the sides serve for
beams and rafters, and the smaller ones
for planks; those in the jaws are flat and
adapted to doors. The animal itself is
often found near ¹⁵⁰ feet long.

XXXI. Nearchus likewise mentions
that, as they passed the coast of the Ik-
thuphagi, they heard of a desert island
at a hundred stadia from the shore. The
natives said it was sacred to the sun, and
was called ^k Nófala, a spot which no one
dared to visit; for those who had at-
tempted it were heard of no more. While
Nearchus was near this place, a bark
manned by Egyptians disappeared, and
the native pilots on board the fleet main-
tained that it must have been lost by ap-

^k That Nófala and Kaníñè or Karnínè are the
same, and that they represent the modern Ashtola,
cannot be doubted; for both are said to lie on the
coast of the Ikthuphagi, and both at one hun-
dred stadia, or seven miles, from shore. And al-
though Ashtola lies at double that distance, as

there is no other island on that coast off at sea,
there can be no room for doubt. Added to this,
Nófala was enchanted when Nearchus was there;
and Ashtola was enchanted when visited by Com-
modore Robinson. An enchantment of two thou-
sand years continuance is a proof irrefragable.

ὅτι ἄρα κατάραντες ὑπ' ἀγνοίης εἰς τὴν νῆσον, γένοιτο ἀφανέες. Νεάρχος δὲ πέμπει κύκλῳ περὶ τὴν νῆσον τριηκόντορον, κελεύσας μὴ καταρχεῖν μὲν εἰς τὴν νῆσον, ἐμβοᾶν δὲ τὰς ἀνθρώπους, ὡς μάλιστ' ἐν χερσὶ παραπλέοντας, καὶ τὸν κυβερνήτην ὀνομάζοντας, καὶ ὅτ' ἄλλ' οὐκ ἀφανὲς τὸ ὄνομα. Ὡς δὲ ἐδέξατο ὑπάκειν, τότε δὲ αὐτὸς λέγει πλεῦσαι εἰς τὴν νῆσον, καὶ καταρχεῖν δὴ προσαναγκάσαι τὰς ναύτας ἐκ ἐθέλοντας· καὶ ἐκβῆναι αὐτὸς, καὶ ἐλέγχει κενὸν μῦθον εἶναι τὸν περὶ τῆς νήσου λόγον. Ἀκῶσαι δὲ καὶ ἄλλον λόγον ὑπὲρ τῆς νήσου ταύτης λεγόμενον, οἰκῆσαι τὴν νῆσον ταύτην μίαν τῶν Νηρηίδων· τὸ δὲ ὄνομα οὐ λέγεσθαι τῆς Νηρηίδος. Ταύτῃ δὲ ὅστις πελάσσει τῇ νήσῳ, τάτῳ συγγίνεσθαι μὲν, ἰχθὺν δὲ ἐξ ἀνθρώπου ποιέεσθαι, αὐτὸν ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὸν πόντον. Ἡλίου δὲ ἀχθεσθέντα τῇ Νηρηίδι, κελεύειν μετοικίζεσθαι αὐτὴν ἐκ τῆς νήσου· τὴν δὲ ὁμολογεῖν μὲν ὅτι ἐξοικισθήσεται, δεῖσθαι δὲ οἱ τὸ πάθημα· καὶ τὸν Ἡλίον ὑποδέχεσθαι, τοὺς δὲ δὴ

proaching too near this island. Nearchus however dispatched a galley to the spot, with orders not to land, but to sail close round, and shout the name of the commander or the officers. This was done without effect, and at last Nearchus went in person to the place, where he landed himself, and compelled his people, much against their will, to land likewise, and in short exploded the whole as an idle fable.

But there was another tale of mythology relating to the same place; for the tradition was, that this island was the residence of a Nereid, whose name indeed was unknown, but whose practice was to seduce such mariners as landed there to her embraces, and then, after transforming them into fish, to throw them into the sea. The Sun was offended at this treachery, and ordered the nymph to find herself some other residence: with this command, she said, she was ready to comply, or if not, she had no power to resist. Upon her submission, the god was satisfied; and then, taking compas-

¹ Τὴν δὲ ὁμολογεῖν μὲν ὅτι ἐξοικισθήσεται, δεῖσθαι δὲ οἱ τὸ πάθημα.

The interpretation of this obscure passage by Facius, Blancard, &c. is rejected by Gronovius, who renders it, *Illam Soli aperuisse hunc ipsi infinitum affectum, cum obsecratione ut et ipse vellet illi indulgere, more eorum qui antehac venissent ad suam insulam*. But the primitive sense of πάθημα [case, fortune, lot, or condition] has suggested to me a different construction: for Arrian uses τὴν Νεῖλῳ τὸ πά-

θημα τῷτο, cap. 6. This is the case with the Nile. A similar usage occurs in c. 30. We may therefore take the whole passage thus: τὴν δὲ ὁμολογεῖν μὲν ὅτι ἐξοικισθήσεται [ὁμολογεῖν] δὲ τὸ πάθημα δεῖσθαι οἱ. She consented to depart, *she allowed that this was the lot assigned to her. Hanc conditionem sibi esse impositam: hanc sortem sibi esse innoxam: sibi opus esse hanc sortem pati*. But, in a case of doubt, the reader will probably rather trust to Gronovius than to the translator.

ἀνθρώπους ὅστινας ἀν' ἰχθύας ἐξ ἀνθρώπων πεποίηκε κατελέσαντα, ἀνθρώπους αὖθις ἐξ ἰχθύων ποιῆσαι· καὶ ἀπὸ τούτων, τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τὸ γένος καὶ εἰς Ἀλεξάνδρον κατελθεῖν. Καὶ ταῦτα ὅτι ψεύδεα ἐξελέγχει Νέαρχος, ἐκ ἐπαινώ αὐτὸν ἔγωγε τῆς σχολῆς τε καὶ σοφίης, ὅτε κάρτα χαλεπὰ ἐξελεγχθῆναι εὐντα· ταλαίπωρόν γε ὃν γινώσκων τοὺς παλαιὰς λόγους ἐπιλεγόμενον ἐξελέγχειν ὄντας ψευδέας.

XXXII. Ὅτι τὰς Ἰχθυοφάγους Γαδρώσιοι εἰς τὸ ἄνω οἰκέεσι γῆν ποιεῖν καὶ ψαμμώδεα. Ἐνθεν καὶ τὰ πολλὰ κακὰ ἢ στρατιῇ τε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔπαθε, καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλεξάνδρος, ὥς μοι ἤδη ἐν τῷ ἄλλῳ λόγῳ ἀπήγηται. Ὡς δὲ εἰς τὴν Καρμανίην ἀπὸ τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων κατήρην ὁ στρατός, ἐνταῦθα ἵνα πρῶτον τῆς Καρμανίης ὠρμίσαντο, ἐπ' ἀγκυρέων ἐστάλευσαν, ὅτι ῥηχὴν παρετέτατο εἰς τὸ πέλαιος τρηχέει. Ἐνθεν δὲ ὡσαύτως ἔκετι πρὸς ἡλίαν δυσμένει ἐπλεον· ἀλλὰ τὸ μεταξὺ δύσιός τε ἡλίαν καὶ τῆς ἄρκτου ἔτω μᾶλλον τι αἱ πρῶται αὐτοῖσιν ἐπέχον. Καὶ οὕτω ἡ Καρμανίη τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων τῆς γῆς καὶ τῶν ὀρεῶν εὐδενδροτέρη τε καὶ εὐκαρποτέρη ἐστὶ, καὶ ποιωδὴς μᾶλλον τι καὶ ἐνυδρὸς. Ὀρμίζονται δὲ ἐν Βάδει χώρῳ τῆς Καρμανίης οἰκισμένοι, δένδρεά τε πολλὰ ἡμέρα πεφυκότα ἔχοντι, πλὴν ἐλάτης, καὶ ἀμπέλους ἀγαθῆς, καὶ σιτοφόρῳ. Ἐνθεν δὲ ὀρμηθέντες, καὶ διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους ὀκτακοσίους, πρὸς ἀγριαλῶ ὀρμίζονται ἐρήμῳ. Καὶ καθορῶσιν ἄκρην μακρὴν, ἐξανέχουσιν ἐπὶ πολλὸν εἰς τὸ πέλαιον

on those who had suffered by her enchantment, transformed them back again from fishes into men. This was the origin of the Ikhtuophagi, and their descendants continued to inhabit the same coast to the time of Alexander. I give no credit to Nearchus for waisting his time and misapplying his talents in the refutation of such idle fables, which require no consideration, and it is an useless task to dwell upon them for a moment.

XXXII. Inland, north of the Ikhtuophagi the country is Gadrosia, a sandy and miserable district. The sufferings of Alexander and his army in passing it, have been related in my former work. But the fleet had now reached Karmania, and at the cape where they had anchored they were obliged to lie in the open road, because of the shoal and foul ground, which extended along the shore far out into the sea. From this cape their course was no longer west, but north west, and Karmania was found to be a country not desolate like that of the Orítæ or Ikhtuophagi, but abounding with corn and fruit and pasture, well wooded and well watered.

Upon doubling the cape they came to an anchor at Badis, [a place very different from all that they had lately experienced] for it was well inhabited; it afforded a supply of grain, it abounded with vines, and all kind of trees, yielding fruit for the use of man, except the olive. From hence, after relieving their wants, they proceeded eight hundred stadia, and anchored again upon an open shore. And

λαγος. Ἀπέχεν δὲ ἐφάνετο ἡ ἄκρη
 πλόον ὡς ἡμέρης. Καὶ οἱ τῶν χώρων
 ἐκείνων δαήμονες, τῆς Ἀραβίης ἔλεγον τὴν
 ἀνίσχυσαν ταύτην ἄκρην· καλέεσθαι δὲ
 Μάκετα. Ἐνθεν τὰ κιννάμωμά τε καὶ
 ἄλλα τοιαύτοτροπα ἐς Ἀσσυρίαν ἀγινέ-
 εσθαι. Καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς αἰγιαλῆς τέτυ, ἵνα
 περ ὁ στόλος ἐσάλευε, καὶ τῆς ἄκρης, ἦν-
 τινα καταντικρὺ ἀφειώρων ἀνέχουσιν ἐς
 τὸ πέλαγος, ὁ κόλπος ἐμοί τε δοκεῖ, καὶ
 Νεάρχῳ ὡσαύτως ἐδόκεεν, ἐς τὸ εἶσω
 ἀναχῆται, ὅπερ εἰκὸς, ἡ ἐρυθρὴ θάλασ-
 σα. Ταύτην τὴν ἄκρην ὡς κατέιδον, Ὁ-
 νησίκριτος μὲν ἐπέχοντος ἐπ' αὐτὴν πλέειν
 ἐκέλευεν, ὡς μὴ κατὰ τὸν κόλπον ἐλα-
 τρεύοντας ταλαπυρέεσθαι. Νεάρχος δὲ
 ἀποκρίνεται νήπιον Ὀνησίκριτον, εἰ ἀγνοεῖ
 ἐπ' ὅτῳ ἐσάλη πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὁ στόλος.
 Οὐ γὰρ ὅτι ἀπορίῃ ἦν περὶ διασωθῆναι
 πάντα αὐτῶ τὸν στρατὸν, ἐπὶ τῷδε ἄρα
 ἐκπέμψαι τὰς νέας· ἀλλὰ ἐθέλοντα αἰ-
 γιαλὲς τε τὰς κατὰ τὴν παράπλην κατα-
 σκέψασθαι; καὶ ὅρμους καὶ νησίδας, καὶ

here, [on the opposite coast] at the dis-
 tance of a day's sail, a vast promon-
 tory presented itself to their view, which ^{Mosendon.}
 they were informed was part of Arabia;
 and that the name of it was Máketa.
 They were likewise informed by those
 who were acquainted with the country,
 that from the ports in its neighbourhood,
 "cinnamon and other commodities of
 that sort [that is to say spices] were con-
 veyed into Assyria.

A line drawn from the point where
 they were now anchored to the opposite
 cape on the Arabian coast, Nearchus con-
 siders as the commencement of that gulph
 which is called the "sea of Erythras, [but
 which is, properly speaking, the gulph of
 Persia.]

Upon sight of this cape, Onesícritus
 proposed that they should steer for it di-
 rectly, and not advance into the gulph,
 where they might be driven about, [with-
 out knowing what course to take] and be
 exposed to the same distress they had al-
 ready experienced.

This proposal Nearchus thought ab-
 surd, and contended that Onesícritus was
 mistaken, if he supposed this to be the in-
 tention of Alexander; for he had not
 fitted out the fleet with a view to the ac-
 commodation of his forces, or as wanting
 means to conduct them by land: but
 that his design^o was to explore the coasts
 by means of this navigation, to examine

^m This is a plain proof that the Arabs of Oman
 from Mascat, Sohar, &c. were in possession of the
 trade between India and Assyria; that is, they
 went to India for the spices, and carried them up
 the gulph of Persia to Terédon, and by the Eu-
 phrates to Babylon. From Babylon or Terédon
 these articles would pass by caravans to the Medi-
 terranean.

ⁿ Ἐρυθρὴ θάλασσα. According to Agathár-
 chides, the sea of Erythras. The mythology of
 Erythras is always referred to the gulph of Persia;

but the Erythræan sea, in general acceptation,
 commences at Suez or Arsinoë, and extends over
 the whole eastern ocean as far as it was discovered
 by the ancients.

^o Nearchus, as well as other writers, attributes
 the march through Gadrófia, and this expedition by
 sea, to the vanity of Alexander. But his own lan-
 guage in this instance proves that utility was much
 more consulted in the attempt than ostentation.
 It is here truly that Alexander makes good his
 boast—*Aperiam terras gentibus.*

ὅσις κόλπος ἐσέχοι, ἐκπεριπλῶσαι τῆτον, καὶ πόλιας ὅσαι ἐπιθαλάσσια· καὶ εἴτις ἐγκαρπος γῆ, καὶ εἴτις ἐρήμη. Σφᾶς ὧν οὐ χρῆναι ἀφανίσαι τὸ ἔργον, πρὸς τέρματι ἤδη ἔοντας τῶν πόνων, ἄλλως τε καὶ ἀπόρως ἐτι τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἐν τῷ παράπλῳ ἔχοντας· δεδιέναι τε, ὅτι ἡ ἄκρη ἐς μεσημβρίην ἀνέχει, μὴ ἐρήμῳ τε τῇ ταύτῃ γῇ καὶ ἀνύδρῳ καὶ Φλογώδει ἐγκύρσειαν. Ταῦτα ἐνίκα, καὶ μοι δοκεῖ περιφανέως σῶσαι τὴν στρατιὴν τῇδε τῇ βελῇ Νέαρχος. Τὴν γὰρ δὴ ἄκρην ἐκείνην, καὶ τὴν πρὸς αὐτῇ χώραν πᾶσαν, ἐρήμην τε εἶναι λόγος κατέχει, καὶ ὕδατος ἀπορίῃ ἔχεσθαι. Ἀλλὰ ἐπλῶον γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆ αἰγιαλῷ ἄραντες, τῇ γῇ προσεχέες.

XXXIII. Καὶ πλώσαντες σαδίς ὡς ἐπ' ἑκατοσίαις, ἐν ἄλλῳ αἰγιαλῷ ὠρμίσαντο· Νεόπτανα ὄνομα τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. Καὶ αὖθις ὑπὸ τὴν ἑω ἀνήγοντο· καὶ πλώσαντες σαδίς ἑκατὸν, ὠρμίζονται κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀναμίν· ὃ δὲ χῶρος Ἀρμόζια ἐκαλέετο. Φίλια δὲ ἦδη καὶ πᾶμφορα ταύτῃ ἦν, πλὴν ἐλαίας οὐ πεφύκεσαν. Ἐνταῦθα ἐκβάλλουσιν τε ἐκ τῶν νεῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πολλῶν πόνων ἄσμενοι ἀνεπαύσαντο, μεμνημένοι ὅσα κακὰ κατὰ τὴν θάλασσαν πεπονθότες ἦσαν, καὶ πρὸς τῇ γῇ τῶν Ἰχθυοφάγων, τὴν τε ἐρημίην τῆς χώρας, καὶ τὰς ἀνθρώπους ὅπως θηριώδεις, καὶ τὰς σφῶν ἀπορίας ἐπιλεγό-

the harbours and islands, to penetrate into the gulphs and bays, if any should occur, to mark such towns or cities as they might find on the coast, and to explore the nature of the country whether fruitful or desert. That it was their duty not to frustrate their sovereign's design, when they had now almost arrived at the period of their labours, and were besides reasonably assured of a supply for their necessities. As to himself, he was afraid that, as the opposite cape had a tendency to the south, the coast beyond would be found nothing but a desert, parched and without water.

These suggestions prevailed; and to me it appears plain, that this advice of Nearchus was the preservation of the fleet, for the accounts which we now have of this cape and the coast adjoining all agree in stating that they are desert, and that no water is to be had.

XXXIII. The fleet, when it weighed anchor from Badis, kept close along the shore for 700 stadia, till they came to Neóptana, where they had again nothing but an open road. They therefore left this station the following morning, and after a short course of 100 stadia, reached the river A'namis in the district of Harmozia P. Here they were received with hospitality, and found every thing in plenty, except olives. The men were now allowed liberty to go on shore, and all were full of mutual congratulation, reflecting with pleasure on the various distresses they had endured, and recounting the dangers they had been exposed to on the coast of the Ikthuthóphagi, on the margin of the desert, and from the ferocity of the natives, as well as

P Ormus is an island which derives its name from the coast; it is properly called Geroon or Turun. But Harmoz, Hormus, and Harmozeia, are

names from all antiquity known in this tract, which is Mogho-stan, or the date country, a district of Karmania.

μενοι. Καί τινες αὐτῶν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἐς τὸ πρῶτον ἀνῆλθον, ἀποσκεδαζέμενοι τῆς στρατιῆς κατὰ ζήτησιν ἄλλος ἄλλου. Ἐνταῦθα ἄνθρωπος σφίσι ὤφθη χλαμύδα τε φορῶν Ἑλληνικὴν, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὡς Ἕλληνα ἐσκευασμένος, καὶ Φωνὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐφώνεε. Τῆτον οἱ πρῶτοι ἰδόντες, δακρύσαι ἔλεγον· οὕτω τι παράλογον σφίσι φαίνεται, ἐκ τῶν τοσῶνδε κακῶν Ἑλλήνα μὲν ἄνθρωπον ἰδεῖν, Ἑλλάδος δὲ Φωνῆς ἀκούσαι. Ἐπηρεῶν τε ὀπόθεν ἦκοι, καὶ ὅστις ὦν. Ὁ δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς στρατοπέδου τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀποσκεδαζόμενος ἔλεγε, καὶ εἶναι οὐ πόρρω τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ αὐτὸν Ἀλεξάνδρον. Τῆτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον βοῶντες τε καὶ κροτέοντες ἀνάγχεσι παρὰ τὸν Νεάρχον· καὶ Νεάρχῳ πάντα ἔφρασε, καὶ ὅτι πέντε ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπέχει τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης. Τὸν τε ὑπαρχὸν τῆς χώρας ταύτης δέξεν ἔφη Νεάρχῳ, καὶ ἔδειξε. Καὶ μετὰ τούτῳ Νεάρχος γνώμην ποιεῖται, ὅπως ἀναβήσεται πρὸς βασιλέα. Τότε μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ τὰς νέας ἀπῆλθον. Ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἑῷ τὰς νέας ἀνεώλκεεν, ἐπισκευῆς τε εἵνεκα, ὅσαι αὐτῶν κατὰ τὸν πλεῖν πεπονθήκεσαν· καὶ ἅμα ὅτι ἐν τῷ χώρῳ τέτω ὑπολέπεσθαι οἱ ἐδόκεε τὸν πολλὸν στρατόν. Χάρακρά τε ὦν περιβάλλεται διπλῆν ἐπὶ τῷ ναυστάθμῳ, καὶ τείχος γήινον· καὶ τάφρον βαθεῖαν, ἀπὸ τῆς ποταμῆς τῆς ὀχθῆς ἀρξάμενος, ἕς τε ἐπὶ τὸν αἰγιαλὸν, ἵνα αἱ νέες αὐτῷ ἀνεκρυγμέναι ᾖσαν.

XXXIV. Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὁ Νεάρχος ταῦτα ἐκόςμεε, τῆς χώρας ὁ ὑπαρχος πεπυσμένος ὅπως ἐν μεγάλῃ φροντίδι ἔχει

their want of all the necessaries of life. Some likewise wandered from the shore up into the country, in search of what they might find to relieve their wants, or gratify their curiosity.

In the course of these rambles, a man was encountered, who had the cloak and habit of a Greek, and who spoke the language. Such was their surprise, after all their dangers, to see a Greek and to hear their own language, that they wept for joy. They enquired who he was, and whence he came; when he informed them, that he had wandered from the Macedonian camp, and that Alexander with his army was at no great distance. Clamouring therefore and clapping their hands, they hurried him to Nearchus, where the same story was repeated, and they learnt that the King and the army were not farther off than a journey of five days. He added likewise, that he could introduce them to the president of the district, which he immediately performed.

Hearing this, Nearchus determined upon going up to the army. He returned to the fleet for the evening, but the next morning he ordered the ships to be drawn on shore, both for the purpose of repairing such as were damaged, and because he meant the bulk of his forces to remain upon the spot. For this purpose he formed a camp, enclosing it with a double palisade and a rampart of earth, and carrying a trench from the river to the sea, within which the ships were drawn up and secured.

XXXIV. While Nearchus was occupied in this business, the governor of the district, who had heard of the great

Ἀλεξάνδρος τὰ ἀμφὶ τὸν σόλον τῆτον, μέγα δὴ τι ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀγαθὸν ἀνέγνω πᾶσι δαί, οἱ πρῶτος οἱ ἀπαγγέλλει τῷ στρατῷ τὴν σωτηρίην, καὶ τῷ Νεάρχῳ, ὅτι οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον ἀφίξεταί ἐς ὄψιν τὴν βασιλείας· ἔτω δὴ τὴν βραχυτάτην ἐλάσας, ἀπαγγέλλει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ὅτι Νεάρχος ἔτος προσάγει ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν. Τότε μὲν δὴ καίπερ ἀπιστεῖν τῷ λόγῳ Ἀλεξάνδρος, ἀλλὰ ἐχάρη γε κατὰ τὸ εἶκος τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ. Ὡς δὲ ἡμέρῃ τε ἄλλῃ ἐξ ἄλλης ἐγένετο, καὶ ζυγνιθῆντι αὐτῷ τῆς ἀγγελίης τὸν χρόνον, ἐκέτι πῶς τὰ ἐξηγγελμένα ἐφάνετο· πεμπόμενοι τε ἄλλοι ἐπ' ἄλλοισιν, ὡς ἐπὶ κομιδῇ τῷ Νεάρχῳ, αἱ μὲν τινες ὀλίγον τῆς ὁδῆς προελθόντες, κενεοὶ ἐπανήσαν ἔδην ἐγκύρσαντες· αἱ δὲ πορρωτέρω ἐλθόντες καὶ διαμαρτύνοντες τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Νεάρχον, ἐδὲ αὐτοὶ ἐπανήσαν· ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν μὲν ἄνθρωπον ἐκείνον, ὡς κενὰ οἱ ἀγγέλλαντα, καὶ λυπηρότερα οἱ τὰ πρήγματα ποιήσαντα τῇ ματαίᾳ εὐφροσύνῃ, συλλαβὴν κελεύει Ἀλεξάνδρος· αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ τε ὄψει καὶ τῇ γνώμῃ δῆλος ἦν μεγάλῳ ἄχει βεβλημένος. Ἐν τῷ δὲ τῶν τινες κατὰ ζήτησιν τῷ Νεάρχῳ ἐσταλμένων, ἵππας τε ἐπὶ κομιδῇ αὐτῶν καὶ ἀπῆνας ἢ ἄγοντες, ἐντυγχάνουσι κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν αὐτῷ τε τῷ Νεάρχῳ καὶ τῷ Ἀρχίῳ, καὶ πάντε ἢ ἐξ ἅμα αὐτοῖσι· μετὰ τοσούτων γὰρ ἀνῆκε. Καὶ ἐντυχόντες, ἔτε αὐτὸν ἐγνώρισαν, ἔτε τὸν Ἀρχίην. Οὕτω τοι κάστα ἄλλοιοι ἐφάνησαν, κομοῶντες τε καὶ ρυπόωντες, καὶ μεσοὶ ἄλμης, καὶ ρικνοὶ τὰ σώματα, καὶ ὤχτροι ὑπὸ ἀγρυπνίης τε καὶ τῆς ἄλλης

anxiety of Alexander respecting the expedition, and flattering himself with hopes of reward for his intelligence, if he were the first to report the safe arrival of the fleet, and that the Admiral might shortly be expected in the presence, hastened up to the camp by the shortest road, and acquainted the King that Nearchus was actually on his journey from the coast. Alexander, as was natural, was rejoiced at the intelligence, though he doubted the fact. But several days passing without seeing any thing of Nearchus, his suspicions increased with the duration of the interval, and he concluded that the whole was the fabrication of the governor. Parties however were dispatched every way for the protection of the Admiral; but some returned soon without proceeding far upon the search; and some still remained absent, who had extended their enquiries to a distance. This therefore adding to the anxiety of the King, he reproached the governor for sporting with his expectations by a delusion utterly false, and, ordering him into confinement, suffered his countenance to betray the disappointment and vexation of his heart.

In the mean time one of the parties, which had been sent out with horses and carriages for the accommodation of Nearchus, happened to hit upon the road by which he and Archias, with five or six in their company, were coming up to the camp. But the encounter seemed accidental, and they recognized neither of them as the persons of whom they were in search. This in fact might naturally happen, for they were completely disfigured by the tattered appearance of their dress, their hair wild and neglected, their bodies emaciated, their countenances wan and weatherbeaten, and exhibiting

ταλαιπωρίας. Ἀλλὰ ἐρομένοις ᾗ αὐτοῖς ἵνα περ ἔη Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀποκρινάμενοι τῷ χώρον, οἱ δὲ παρήλαινον. Ἀρχίης δὲ ἐπιφρασθεὶς λέγει πρὸς Νέαρχον, ὦ Νέαρχε, τέτρες τῆς ἀνθρώπου δι' ἐρημίας ἐλαύνει τὴν αὐτὴν ἡμῖν ὁδόν, ἢ ἐπ' ἄλλῳ τινὶ συντίθῃμι, ἢ ὅτι μὴ κατὰ ζήτησιν ἡμετέραν ἀπεσταλμένοις ὅτι δὲ οὐ γινώσκουσιν ἡμέας, ἢ ἐν θωύματι ποιεόμεαι. Οὕτω γάρ τοι ἔχομεν κακῶς, ὥς ἄγνωστοι εἶναι. Φράσωμεν ὦν αὐτοῖς αἵτινες εἴμεν· καὶ τῆς ἐρώμεθα κατ' ὅ, τι ταύτην ἐλαύνουσιν. Ἐδοξε τῷ Νεάρχῳ ἐνάσιμα λέγειν. Καὶ ἤροντο ὅποι ἐλαύνουσιν· οἱ δὲ ὑποκρίνονται, ὅτι κατὰ ζήτησιν Νεάρχῳ τε καὶ τῷ στρατῷ τῷ ναυτικῷ. Ὁ δὲ, οὗτος, ἔφη, ἐγὼ εἰμι Νέαρχος, καὶ Ἀρχίης, οὗτος. Ἀλλ' ἄγετε ἡμέας· ἡμεῖς δὲ τὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς στρατῆς Ἀλέξανδρῳ ἀπηγησόμεθα.

XXXV. Ἀναλαβόντες ὦν αὐτὲς ἐπὶ τὰς ἀπῆνας, ὀπίσω ἤλαινον. Καὶ τινες αὐτῶν τούτων ὑποφθάσαι ἐτελήσαντες τὴν ἀγγελίην, προδραμόντες λέγουσιν Ἀλέξανδρῳ, ὅτι ἔτος τοι Νέαρχος, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ Ἀρχίης καὶ πέντε ἄλλοι κομίζονται παρὰ σε· ὑπὲρ δὲ τῷ στρατῷ πάντος ἔδεν εἶχον ὑποκρίνασθαι. Τῷτο ὦν ἐκεῖνο συνθεὶς ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, τῆς μὲν παραλόγως ἀποσωθῆναι, τὴν στρατὴν δὲ πᾶσαν διεφθάρθαι αὐτῷ, οὐ τοσόνδε τῷ Νεάρχῳ τε καὶ τῷ Ἀρχίῳ τῇ σωτηρίῃ ἔχαρεν, ὅσον ἐλύπει αὐτὸν ἀπολομένη ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα. Οὕτω πάντα ταῦτα ἔρητο, καὶ ὁ Νέαρχός τε καὶ ὁ Ἀρχίης προσῆγον. Τῆς δὲ μόγις καὶ χαλεπῶς ἐπέγνω Ἀ-

the signs of suffering and distress. To their enquiries where Alexander was, they barely mentioned the place of his encampment, and were passing on without farther notice. "How is this?" says Archias, who conjectured what was their object; "Surely, Nearchus, if I am not mistaken, these men, who are in the same road we have taken through the desert, can be dispatched for no other purpose but in search of us. That they know us not is no wonder, for our appearance is a disguise. Let us stop and tell them who we are, and enquire why they are upon this road." To this Nearchus assented, and enquired which way they were going. "We are in search of Nearchus," they replied, "and sent to enquire about the fleet." "I am Nearchus," rejoined the Admiral, "and this is Archias: conduct us to Alexander, and we will report to him all the circumstances of our expedition."

XXXV. They were immediately placed in the carriages, and the party returned towards the camp. On their way thither, some [of those who were mounted] eager to be the reporters of an event so fortunate, hastened before the rest, and carried the account to the king, that Nearchus and Archias, with five of their attendants, were upon the road; but of the success or failure of the enterprise, they had made no enquiry, and had nothing to report. This suggested to Alexander that these officers might have had a miraculous escape, but that the rest of their forces must all have perished; and the pleasure he felt upon the preservation of the commanders was overbalanced by the apprehension that the remainder was lost. While this was passing, Nearchus and Archias arrived in his presence: but the very sight of them, disfigured as they were, by their appearance and their dress,

λέξανδρος, ὅτι τε κομόωντας καὶ κακῶς ἐσαλμένους καθεύοντα, ταύτη μᾶλλον τι βεβαιώτερον αὐτῷ τὸ ἄχος ὑπὲρ τῆς στρατῆς τῆς ναυτικῆς ἐγένετο. Ὁ δὲ τὴν δεξιὴν τῷ Νεάρχῳ ἐμβαλὼν καὶ ἀπαγαγὼν μόνον αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐταίρων τε καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν, πολλὸν ἐπὶ χρόνον ἐδάκρυεν. Ὁψὲ δὲ ἀνευγκὼν, Ἀλλὰ ὅτι σύγε ἡμῶν ἐπαλήκεις σῶς (ἔφη) καὶ Ἀρχίας οὗτος, ἔχοι ἂν ἔμοιγε ὡς ἐπὶ συμφορῇ τῇ ἀπάσῃ μετρίως· αἱ δὲ τοι νέες καὶ ἡ στρατιὴ καὶ τινὶ τρόπῳ διεφθάρησαν; ὁ δὲ ὑπελαβὼν, ὦ βασιλεῦ (ἔφη) καὶ αἱ νέες τοι σῶαι εἰσὶ, καὶ ὁ στρατός· ἡμεῖς δὲ αὐτοὶ ἀγγελοὶ τῆς σωτηρίας αὐτῶν ἤκομεν. Ἐτι ὦν μᾶλλον ἐδάκρυε Ἀλέξανδρος, καθότι ἀνελπίστός οἱ ἡ σωτηρίη τῆς στρατῆς ἐφάνετο. καὶ ὅπως ὁρμέουσιν αἱ νέες ἀνηρώτα. Ὁ δὲ, αὐταὶ (ἔφη) ἐν τῷ στόματι τῆς Ἀνάμιδος ποταμῷ ἀνευσσόμεναι ἐπισκευάζονται. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τὸν τε Δία τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ τὸν Ἀμμωνα τὸν Λιθύων ἐπομύειν, ἢ μὴν μᾶλλον ὡς ἐπὶ τῇδε τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ χαίρειν, ἢ ὅτι τὴν Ἀσίην πᾶσαν ἐκτημένους ἔρχεται. Καὶ γὰρ καὶ τὸ ἄχος οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ἀπωλείᾳ τῆς στρατῆς ἀντίρροπον γενέσθαι τῇ ἄλλῃ πάσῃ εὐτυχίᾳ.

XXXVI. Ὁ δὲ ὑπαρχος τῆς χώρας, ὅντινα συνελήφει Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ τῇ ματαιότητι, παρόντα κατιδὼν τὸν Νεάρχον, πίπτει τε αὐτῷ πρὸς τὰ γόνατα, καὶ, Οὗτός τι (ἔφη) ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὃς ἀπήγγειλα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὅτι σῶοι ἤκετε. Ὅρας ὅπως διάκειμαι. Οὕτω δὲ δέχεται Ἀλέξανδρος Νεάρχος ἀφείναι τὸν ἄνδρα, καὶ ἀφίσταται. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ σωτήρια τῇ

hardly suffered him to recognize them as his friends. This added to his suspicion that the fleet had perished; yet he held out his hand to Nearchus, and taking him aside from the party and from his guards, he continued for some time to shed tears without uttering a word; but at length recovering himself from his anguish, "Nearchus," says he, "I feel some satisfaction in the preservation of yourself and Archias, as a diminution of the affliction I feel for the calamity that has befallen my fleet. But tell me how and by what misfortune my ships and my people have been lost." "Sir," said Nearchus, "your ships and your people are all in safety, and we are come up as bearers of the glad tidings." The King now wept more abundantly, the more their preservation was unexpected, and enquired where the fleet was secured: "At the mouth of the Anamis," replied the Admiral, "the ships are all drawn on shore and repairing." "I swear to you," rejoined the King, "by the Libyan Ammon, and by the Jupiter of the Greeks, that I have greater pleasure in the success of this enterprise, than in the reduction of all Asia to my power. For if my fleet had perished, I should have considered it as an overbalance to all the good fortune which has attended me."

XXXVI. In the mean time, the governor of Harmozia, whom Alexander had put into confinement, upon suspicion of his bringing a false report, seeing Nearchus, [and the reception he experienced] fell down at his feet, and "See," says he, "the situation I am in who first brought the account of your arrival." Upon which Nearchus interceded for his release, which was immediately granted.

Alexander now sacrificed for the pre-

στρατῆ ἔδουε Διὶ σωτήρι, καὶ Ἡρακλεῖ, καὶ Ἀπόλλωνι ἀλεξικάκῳ, καὶ Ποσειδῶνι τε, καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι θεοὶ θαλάσσιοι. Καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐποίησε γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικόν, καὶ πομπὴν ἐπεμπε· καὶ Νέαρχος ἐν πρώτοις ἐπόμεπυε, ταινίῃσί τε καὶ ἄνθεσι πρὸς τῆς στρατῆς βαλλόμενος. Ὡς δὲ ταῦτά οἱ τέλος εἶχε, λέγει πρὸς Νέαρχον, Ἐγὼ σε ὦ Νέαρχε ἐκέτι θέλω τὸ πρόσω αὐτε σὺν κινδυνεύειν, αὐτε ταλαπαιρέσθαι. Ἀλλὰ ἄλλος γὰρ τῷ ναυτικῷ ἐξηγήσεται τὸ ἀπὸ τῆδε, ἔς τε καταστῆσαι αὐτὸ ἐς Σῶσα. Νέαρχος ὁ ὑπολαβὼν λέγει, ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἐγὼ μέντοι πάντα πείθεσθαι ἐθέλω τε καὶ ἀναγκάσῃ μοι ἐσίν. Ἀλλὰ εἰ δὴ τι καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ χαρίζεσθαι ἐθέλεις, μὴ ποιήσης ὥδε. Ἀλλὰ με ἕασον ἐξηγήσασθαι ἐς ἅπαν τῷ στρατῷ, ἔς τέ σοι σώας καταστήσω ἐς Σῶσα τὰς νέας. Μηδὲ τὰ μὲν χαλεπά τε αὐτῷ καὶ ἄπορα ἐμοὶ ἐπιτετραμμένα ἐκ σῶ ἔσω· τὰ δὲ εὐπετέα τε καὶ κλέες ἤδη εἰοίμην ἐχόμενα, ταῦτα δὲ ἀφαιρεθέντα, ἄλλῳ ἐς χεῖρας δίδωσθαι. Ἐτι λέγοντα παύει αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ χάριν προσωμολόγη εἰδέναι. Οὕτω δὴ καλαπέμπει αὐτὸν, στρατὴν δὲς ἐς παραπομπήν, ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἰόντι, ὀλίγην. Τῷ δὲ, ἔδδὲ τὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἐπὶ θαλάσσαν ἔξω πόνου ἐγένετο· ἀλλὰ συλληλεγμένοι γὰρ οἱ κύκλῳ βάρβαροι, τὰ ἐρυμνὰ τῆς χώρας τῆς Καρμανίης κατέσχον, ὅτι καὶ ὁ σατράπης αὐτοῖσι τετελευτήκει κατὰ πρόσταξιν Ἀλεξ-

servation of his fleet to Jupiter the preserver, to Hercules, to Apollo the averter of evil, to Neptune, and all the gods of the ocean. He ordered the games for the exhibition of mental talents and personal agility, and directed a solemn procession [in presence of the whole army.] In this procession Nearchus was the principal object of admiration; the whole camp joined in acclamations to his honour, while garlands and flowers were heaped on him, wherever he appeared.

Upon the conclusion of the ceremony, the King addressing him, said, "It is my intention, Nearchus, to expose you to no farther danger or distress, and I shall appoint another commander to carry the fleet up the gulph to Soofa." "Sir," replied Nearchus, "it is both my wish and my duty to obey your commands: but if you desire to confer a favour on me, suffer me to retain my command to the conclusion of the enterprise, and till I shall have carried the fleet in safety up to Soofa. Do not let it be said, that you have laid all the difficulty and danger of the voyage upon me, and that another is to reap the glory of completing it, which is my due, when there is no longer any hazard to encounter."

Alexander suffered him not to proceed farther in his request, but accepted his offer, and acknowledged that he was indebted to him for the continuance of his services. He then ordered a small escort to attend him on his return to the coast, supposing more was not necessary, as the province had been sufficiently subdued. But his return was not without difficulty, for the natives were in a state of revolt upon the removal of their satrap by the King, and had seized upon the fastnesses in the mountains, [with an intention to intercept Nearchus upon his

άνδρα. Ὁ δὲ νεωστὶ καθεστηκώς Τληπό-
λεμος, οὕτω βέβαιον τὸ κράτος ἔχε.
Καὶ δις ἂν καὶ τρίς τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρῃ ἄλ-
λοισι καὶ ἄλλοισι τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιφαι-
νομένοισιν ἐς χεῖρας ἦσαν· καὶ ἕως οὐ-
δὲν τι ἐλινύσαντες, μόλις καὶ χαλεπῶς
ἐπὶ θάλασσαν ἐσώθησαν.

XXXVII. Ἐνταῦθα θύει Νέαρχος
Διὶ σωτῆρι, καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιῇ γυμνικόν.
Ὡς δὲ αὐτῷ τὰ θῆα ἐν κόσμῳ πεποι-
ητο, ἔτω δὴ ἀνήγοντο. Παραπλώσαντες
δὲ νῆσον ἐρήμην τε καὶ τραχέην, ἐν ἄλλῃ
νῆσῳ ὁρμίζονται, μεγάλη ταύτη καὶ οἰκυ-
μένη, πλώσαντες εἰς τρεῖς τριηκοσίας, ἐν-
θενπερ ὠρμήθησαν. Καὶ ἡ μὲν ἐρήμη
νῆσος, Ὀργάνα ἐκαλέετο. Ἐς ἣν δὲ
ὠρμήθησαν, Ὀάρακτα ἄμπελοί τε ἐν
αὐτῇ ἐπεφύκεισαν, καὶ φοίνικες, καὶ σιτο-
φόρος. Τὸ δὲ μήκος ἦν τῆς νῆσου, εἰς ἑκα-
τοκασίαι. Καὶ ὁ ὑπαρχος τῆς νῆσου
Μαζήνης συνέπλει αὐτοῖσι μέχρι Σέσων,
ἐθέλοντῆς ἡγεμῶν τῆς πόλεως. Ἐν ταύτῃ
τῇ νῆσῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τῆς πρώτης δυναστεύ-
σαντος τῆς χώρας ταύτης δεικνύσθαι τὸν
τάφον· ὄνομα δὲ αὐτῷ Ἐρύθρην εἶναι·
ἀπὸ τούτου καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίην τῇ θαλάσσῃ
ταύτῃ εἶναι, Ἐρυθρὴν καλέεσθαι. Ἐν-
θενδε ἐκ τῆς νῆσου ἄραντες ἔπλεον· καὶ
τῇ νῆσῳ αὐτῇ παραπλώσαντες ὅσον διη-
κοσίας εἰς τρεῖς, ὁρμίζονται ἐν αὐτῇ αὖθις.
Καὶ καθορῶσιν ἄλλην νῆσον, ἀπέχουσαν
τῆς μεγάλης ταύτης τεσσαράκοντα μί-

return.] Tlepólemus was the new ap-
pointed satrap, and he was not yet fully
established in his command. Nearchus
was therefore necessitated to encounter
the revoltors twice or three times in the
same day; and though he advanced with
all the dispatch in his power, it was with
great difficulty and some danger that he
at last reached the Anamis.

XXXVII. Here he sacrificed to Jupiter
the preserver, and after the performance
of the gymnastic exercises, prepared for
his departure. These were considered as
religious ceremonies necessary for the suc-
cess of their voyage; and the fleet now
setting sail in a course of 300 stadia passed
a desert islet, and anchored under a larger
island in its neighbourhood. The smaller
one was called O'rgana, and the larger ^{Arek or}
one, 800 stadia in length, Oarakhta; it was ^{L'Arek.}
well inhabited, and proved abundant in ^{Kifmis,}
corn and vines and palm trees. The go- ^{Woroctha,}
vernor of this island was Mazénés, who ^{Wroct.}
came on board the fleet, and offered his
services to conduct it up to Soosa.

In Oarakhta the inhabitants pretended
to shew the tomb of E'rythras, who, they
say, was the first sovereign of their terri-
tory, and who communicated his name
to [the Erythræan ocean, or at least to]
that part of it which is comprehended in
the gulf of Persia.

When the fleet commenced its course
again, they followed the shore of this
island for two hundred stadia, and an-
chored again opposite a smaller isle, which ^{Angar.}
lay at the distance of forty stadia from the

¹ The mention of vines is in some measure ap-
propriate; for the island of Wroct assumes the name
of Kifmis from a grape so called, which is pe-

culiar to it at this day, and of which the inhabit-
ants still export a great quantity. Vines are also
mentioned on the coast.

λιστα σταδίας· Ποσειδῶνος ἱρὴ ἐλέγετο εἶναι, καὶ ἄβατος. Ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν εἰς ἀνήγοντο καὶ καταλαμβάνει αὐτὰς ἀνάπατις, ἕται καρτερῇ, ὥστε τρεῖς τῶν νεῶν ἐποκέλασαι ἐν τῷ ξηρῷ ἐγκέθησαν. Αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι, χαλεπῶς διεκπλώσσαι τὰς ῥηχίας, εἰς τὰ βάθρα διαπεσώθησαν. Αἱ δὲ ἐποκέλασαι, τῆς πλημυρίδος ἐπυγενομένης, αὐταῖς ἐξέπλωσαν τε καὶ δαντεραίαι κατήγοντο ἵνα περὶ ὃ πᾶς στόλος. Ὁρμίζοντα δὲ εἰς ἡσὸν ἄλλην, διέχουσαν τῆς ἡπείρου ὅσον τριηκοσίαις σταδίαις, πλώσαντες τετρακοσίαις. Ἐντεῦθεν ὑπὸ τὴν εἰς ἐπλεον, ἡσὸν ἐρήμην ἐν ἀριστερᾷ παραμείποντες (ὄνομα δὲ τῇ νήσῳ Πύλωρα) καὶ ὁρμίζοντα πρὸς Σισιδῶνι, πολυχρῆσι σμικρῷ, καὶ πάντων ἀπὸρῶν, ὅτι μὴ ὕδατος καὶ ἰχθύων. Ἰχθυοφάγοι γὰρ καὶ ἔτοι ὑπ' ἀναγκῆς ἦσαν, ὅτι ποτηρὰν γῆν νέμονται· ἐνθενδε ὑδρευσάμενοι, καταίρυσιν εἰς Ταρσίην ἄκρην, ἀνατένυσαν εἰς τὸ πέλαιος, πλώσαντες σταδίαις τριηκοσίαις ἐνθεν εἰς Καταίην, ἡσὸν ἐρήμην, ἀλιτενέα. αὕτη ἱρὴ Ἑρμῆος καὶ Ἀφροδίτης ἐλέγετο· σταδίοι τὴν πλῆξ τριηκοσίαις. Ἐς ταύτην ὅσα ἔτη ἀφίσταται ἐκ τῶν περιόικων πρόβατα καὶ αἶγες, ἰρὰ τῷ Ἑρμῇ καὶ τῇ Ἀφροδίτῃ. Καὶ ταῦτα ἀπηγριωμένα ἦν ὄραν ὑπὸ χρόνῳ τε καὶ ἐρημίας.

XXXVIII. Μέχρι τῆδε Καρμανίη. Τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τῆδε Πέρσαι ἔχουσι. Μῆκος τὴν πλῆξ παρὰ τὴν Καρμανίην χάρην, σταδίοι τριχίλιοι καὶ ἐπιακόσιοι. Ζῶσι δὲ κατὰ περ Πέρσαι, ὅτι καὶ ὅμοροι εἰσὶ Πέρσησι· καὶ τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ὡσαύτως κοσμέονται· ἐνθενδε ἄρῳγες ἐκ τῆς νήσου τῆς ἱρῆς

larger. It was sacred to Neptune, and reported to be inaccessible. Upon leaving their anchorage in the morning, the tide of ebb came on so unexpectedly, that ^{Shoal of Ba-} three of their vessels lay fast aground; ^{tidu.} and the remainder escaped with great difficulty over the shoals into deep water. The three, however, that had grounded, upon the return of the tide floated again; and the following day joined the rest of the fleet. The fleet had made good a course of four hundred stadia, and anchored at another island, which was 300 ^{Great Tumbo.} stadia distant from the continent. In the morning they weighed again, and, keeping an island, named Pulōra, on their left, ^{Belior, Polior.} they proceeded to a town on the conti- ^{lior.} nent, called Sidodōnē, or Sifdōnē: it was ^{Buñion.} a poor place, which could afford no supply but fish and water; for the inhabitants here also were Ikthuthophagi, and had no means of support but what they derived from their fishery. After taking in water here, their next course was 300 stadia to Tarsia, a cape of considerable ex- ^{Dgherd, or Certes.} tent; and from thence to Kataia, a low ^{Keish.} desert island, sacred to Mercury and Venus, to which the course was 300 stadia. Hither the inhabitants of the neighbouring islands annually carry goats and sheep, which they dedicate to those deities; and these, from neglect, and the length of time they had been left to themselves, were become perfectly wild.

XXXVIII. At Kataia ends the province of Karmania, along the coast of which they had sailed three thousand seven hundred stadia. The Karmanians resemble the Persians in their manner of living; their armour and military array are the same, and, as adjoining provinces, the customs and habits of both assimilate. ^{Keish.}

παρὰ τὴν Περσίδα ἤδη ἔπλεον, καὶ κατὰ-
γονται εἰς Ἰλαν χώραν, ἵνα λιμὴν πρὸ
νῆσς σμικρῆς καὶ ἐρήμης γίνηται· ὄνομα
τῇ νήσῳ Καΐκανδρος. Ὁ δὲ πλόος εἰς
αὐτοὺς τετρακόσιοι. Ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν εἰς ἄλ-
λην νῆσον πλώσαντες ὁρμίζονται οἰκου-
μένην· ἵνα καὶ μαργαρίτην θηρᾶσθαι λέ-
γει Νέαρχος, κατὰπερ ἐν τῇ Ἰνδῶν θα-
λάσῃ. Ταύτης τῆς νῆσς τὴν ἄκρην πα-
ραπλώσαντες εἰς ὥς τεσσαράκοντα,
ἐνταῦθα ὠρμίσθησαν. Ἐνθενδε πρὸς ὄρει
ὁρμίζονται ὑψηλῷ (Ὀχὸς ὄνομα τῷ ὄρει)
ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ· καὶ ἀλιεῖς αὐτῷ ὠκέον.
Καὶ ἐνθεν πλώσαντες εἰς ὥς τετρακο-
σίους καὶ πενήκοντα, ὁρμίζονται ἐν Ἀπο-
στάνοισι. Καὶ πλοῖα πολλὰ αὐτότι ὠρμει-
κόμην τε ἐπὶ ἀπέχουσα ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
εἰς ὥς ἑξήκοντα. Νυκτὸς δὲ ἐπάραντες
ἐνθεν, ἐσπλώσαν εἰς κόλπον συνοικεό-
μενον πολλῇσι κόμῃσι· εἰς αὐτοὺς τῷ πλόῳ
τετρακόσιοι. Ὁρμίζονται δὲ πρὸς ὑπε-
ρήν. Ταύτῃ Φοινικὲς τε πολλοὶ ἐπεφύ-
κεσαν, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἀκρόθρυα ἐν τῇ Ἑλ-
λάδι γῇ φύεται· ἐνθεν ἄραντες εἰς Γώ-
γανα παραπλέουσι, εἰς ὥς μάλιστα εἰς
ἑξακοσίους, εἰς χώραν οἰκωμένην. Ὁρμι-
ζονται δὲ τῷ ποταμῷ τῷ χειμάρρῳ (ὄνο-
μα δὲ οἱ Ἀρεῶν) ἐν τῇσιν ἐκβολῇσιν.
Ἐνταῦθα χαλεπῶς ὁρμίζονται. Στείνος
γὰρ ἦν ὁ ἑσπλος κατὰ τὸ εἶδος· ὅτι βρά-
χεια τὰ κύκλω αὐτῷ, ἢ ἀνάπτωτις ἐποίησε.
Καὶ ἐνθεν αὖ ἐν εἰσόδῳ ἄλλῃ ποταμῷ
ὁρμίζονται, διεκπλώσαντες εἰς ὥς ὀκτα-

Leaving this island, the fleet proceeded
400 stadia to Ila, where they found a ^{Hillam or Gillam.}
harbour, sheltered by an island in the
offing, called Kaikandros; but it was ^{Andarvia or Inderabia.}
small and uninhabited. On the follow-
ing morning they reached another island, Schitwar,
where they found inhabitants and a fish-
ery for pearls, like that in the Indian
ocean; and, proceeding forty stadia from
a promontory formed by the termination
of the island, they came to an anchor un-
der a lofty mountain, called Okhus. Here ^{Darabin.}
was a good harbour, and a village inha-
bited by fishermen. The next step was
to Apóstana, by a course of 350 stadia; ^{Shevoo.}
and here they found several native vessels
at anchor, and a village sixty stadia from
the shore: but, leaving it in the night,
they proceeded 400 stadia to a bay, where <sup>The bay, Na-
bon. The mountain,
Dahr-Alban.</sup>
they anchored at the foot of a mountain.
They had here villages all round them,
and the country abounded with palm
trees and others, bearing fruits, similar to
those of Greece. Upon leaving this place,
their stretch was 600 stadia to Gógana, Kongoon,
where they anchored at the mouth of a
winter torrent, called A'reon. The place
was not without inhabitants, but the an-
chorage unsafe on account of the shoals
and breakers, which appeared on the ebb
of the tide, and the approach was narrow
and dangerous. Their next progress was
800 stadia, when they anchored not with-

* The date and the cocoa are both palms. We have seen the cocoa in the Indian ocean, but in the gulph it is probably the date.

κοσίους· Σιτακὸς ὄνομα τῷ ποταμῷ ἦν·
ἔδῃ ἐν τῇτῳ εὐμαρέως ὀρμίζονται. Καὶ
ὁ πλοὺς ἅπας ἔτος ὁ παρὰ τὴν Περσίδα,
βράχεια τε ἦσαν, καὶ ῥηχίαι καὶ τενάγεια.
Ἐνταῦθα οἶπον καταλαμβάνουσι πολὺν,
ζυγυκεκομισμένον κατὰ πρόσταξιν βασι-
λέως, ὥς σφίσι εἶναι ἐπισιτίσασθαι.
Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τὰς πάσας
μίαν καὶ ἑικοσι. Καὶ τὰς ναῦς ἀνενυ-
σάμενοι, ὅσαι μὲν πεπονήκεισαν, ἐπεσκεύ-
αζον· τὰς δὲ ἄλλας ἐφ' ἐράπτειον.

XXXIX. Ἐνθενδε ὀρμηθέντες, εἰς Ἱε-
ρατιν πάλιν ἀφίκοντο, ἐς χώρον οἰκόμενον·
ἐπ' ἡλικίοιοι καὶ πενήκοντα σταδίοι ὁ πλοῦς.
Ὀρμίσθησαν δὲ ἐν διώρυγῃ ἀπὸ τῆς ποτα-
μῆς ἐμβεβλημένη ἐς θάλασσαν, ἥ ὄνομα
ἦν Ἡράτεμις. Ἀμα δὲ ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντο
παραπλέουσιν ἐς ποταμὸν χειμάρρην, ὄνο-
μα Πάδαργον. Ὁ δὲ χώρος χειρόνησος
ἅπας. Καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ κηποί τε πολλοί,
καὶ ἀκρόθρυα παντοῖα ἐφύετο· ὄνομα τῷ
χώρῳ Μεσαμβρία. Ἐκ Μεσαμβρίας δὲ
ὀρμηθέντες, καὶ διεκπλώσαντες σταδίους
μάλις ἐς διηκοσίους, ἐς Ταόκην ὀρμι-
ζονται, ἐπὶ ποταμῷ Γράνιδι. Καὶ ἀπὸ
τῆς ἐς τὸ ἄνω Περσῶν βασιλείαν ἦν,
ἀπέχοντα τῆς ποταμῆς τῶν ἐκβολέων στα-
δίους ἐς διηκοσίους. Κατὰ τῆτον τὸν πα-
ράπλεον λέγουσι Νέαρχος ὀφθῆναι κῆτος
ἐκβεβλημένον εἰς τὴν ἡύονα· καὶ τῆτο προσ-
πλώσαντας τινας τῶν ναυτῶν ἐκμείλῃσαι,
καὶ φάσαι εἶναι πηχέων πενήκοντα· μέ-
μα δὲ αὐτῷ εἶναι φοιδατὸν, ἔτι τι ἐς

out danger at the mouth of another river,
called Sitakus. The whole navigation Kaneh Shei-
tan Kenn.
along this part of the coast of Persia is
among shoals and * breakers; but they se-
cured themselves in their present station, by
drawing their ships on shore, in order to
careen and refit such of them as had been
injured in the voyage. This business em-
ployed them for one and twenty days,
during which delay they received a sup-
ply of provisions, which the King had or-
dered to be sent down to the coast for
their relief.

XXXIX. Upon resuming the prosecu-
tion of their voyage, they arrived, after a
passage of 750 stadia, at Hiératis, and Kierasin?
Koulier.
anchored in a cut, which is derived from
the river to the sea, and is called Herá-
temis. On the following morning, as
soon as it was day, they moved again, and
reached the Padargus, a winter torrent.
In this passage, they had followed the
winding of the coast round a peninsula,
(on which they saw plantations and gar-
dens, with all kind of fruit trees) and
anchored at a place called Mésambria. Bosheer
Abu-Shar.

From Mésambria they proceeded 200
stadia to Táoke, and anchored in the river
Granis, [a stream which comes from Gra:]
in the neighbourhood, at the distance of
200 stadia, is a palace of the kings of
Persia. During their passage this day,
they had seen a whale thrown ashore by
the sea, which some of the people ap-
proached, and found, upon measuring it,
that it was seventy-five feet in length.

* This is an exact description of the coast from
Kongoon, round cape Verdistan, to Kenn or Ka-

neh. Cape Verdistan is marked by modern navi-
gators only to be avoided.

βάθος ἦκον, ὡς καὶ ἐπὶ πῆχυν ἐπέχεν· ὅσραι τε καὶ λοπάδας καὶ φυκία πολλὰ ἔχεν ἐπιπεφυκότα. Καὶ δελφίνας λέγει ὅτι καθορᾶν ἦν πολλὰς ἀμφὶ τῷ κήτει, καὶ τὰς δελφίνας τῶν ἐν τῇ ἑσῶ θαλάσσει μέζονας. Ἐνθεν ᾗ ὁρμηθέντες, καλύγονται ἐς Ῥώγωνιν ποταμὸν χιμαῖρρον, ἐν λιμένι εὐόρμῳ. Μῆκος τῆ παραπλῆς ἑαδίοι διηκόσιοι. Ἐνθενδε τετρακοσίαις ἑαδίοις διεκπλώσαντες, αὐλίζονται ἐν ποταμῷ χιμαῖρρῳ· Βρίζανα τῷ ποταμῷ ὄνομα. Ἐνταῦθα χαλεπῶς ὠρμίσαντο, ὅτι ῥηχὴ ἦν, καὶ βράχεια· καὶ χοιράδες ἐκ τῆ πόντος ἀνέειχον. Ἀλλ' ὅτε ἡ πλημμύρα ἐπῆκε, τότε ὠρμήσαντο· ὑπὸ νύκτε δὲ τῆ ὕδατος, ἐπὶ ξηρῷ ὑπελείφθησαν αἱ νῆες. Ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ πλημμυρὶς ἐν τάξει ἀμείψασα ἐπῆλθε, τότε δὴ ἐκπλώσαντες ὠρμίζονται ἐπὶ ποταμῷ ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ποταμῷ Ἀροσίς, μέγιστος τῶν ποταμῶν, ὡς λέγει Νεάρχος, ὅσοι ἐν τῷ παραπλῶ τῷδε ἐμβάλλουσιν ἐς τὸν ἕζον πόντον.

XL. Μέχρι τῆδε Πέρσαι οἰκέουσι· τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ τέτων, Σάσιοι. Σασίων δὲ ἔθνος αὐτόνομον κατύπερθε προσοικίαι· Οὐξιοὶ καλεῖνται· ὑπὲρ ὧν λέλεκτά μοι ἐν τῇ ἄλλῃ συγγραφῇ, ὅτι λησάει εἰσι. Μῆκος τῆ παραπλῆς τῆς Περσίδος χώρας, ἑαδίοι τετρακόσιοι καὶ τετρακισχίλιοι. Τὴν δὲ Περσίδα γῆν, τριχᾶ νεμεμῆσθαι τ' ὠρέων, λόγος κατέχει. Τὸ μὲν αὐτῆς πρὸς τῇ

The hide of it was * scaly, a foot and half in thickness, covered with † barnacles and sea-weed. Dolphins were likewise seen hovering about the body, much larger than those which we have in the Mediterranean sea.

At the conclusion of their course, they arrived at Rhôgônis, a winter torrent, affording a commodious harbour; and this day they had advanced but 200 stadia.

Four hundred stadia more brought them to Brizana, a winter torrent, where they anchored in a dangerous situation, with a surf and shoals and breakers all around them. Here they had arrived at the time of flood, and as the water ebbed away, the vessels were all left dry upon the beach. But as soon as the tide rose again, they weighed, and stood off the shore till they reached the river A'rofis, which, Nearchus says, is the largest of all the rivers he had seen in the course of his navigation.

XL. At the A'rofis terminates the province of Persis, and that of Soofiana commences. And inland from Soofiana are the Uxians, an independent tribe of plunderers, whom I have mentioned in my former work. The coast of Persis extends 4400 stadia, and, consistently with its climate, and the temperature of the air, it may be considered as divided into three districts. That part which lies along

* The whale is not scaly, and perhaps *φολιδωτός* will bear a better interpretation; *rugged* or *indurated*.

† *ὄστρεα* cannot be better rendered than by *barnacles*, the shell of which adheres to the bottom of ships, and all bodies long exposed to the sea.

ἐρυθρῇ θαλάσῃ οἰκούμενον, ἀμμώδες τε εἶναι καὶ ἄκαρπον ὑπὸ καύματος· τὸ δὲ ἐπιτελείως πρὸς ἄρκτον τε καὶ βορέην ἀνεμον ἰόντων, καλῶς κεκρᾶσθαι τῶν ὠρέων. Καὶ τὴν χώραν ποιῶδεά τε εἶναι, καὶ λαμῶνας ὑψηλὰς καὶ ἄμπελον πολλὴν φέρειν, καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι καρποὶ, πλὴν ἐλάσης· παραδείσοις τε παντοίοις τεθηλέαι, καὶ ποταμοῖσι καθαροῖσι διαρρέεσθαι, καὶ λίμνησι· καὶ ὄρνισιν ὁκόσοισιν ἀμφὶ ποταμούς τε καὶ λίμνας ἐστὶ τὰ ἥδια. Ἰπποισὶ τε ἀγαθὴν εἶναι καὶ τοῖσιν ἄλλοις ὑποζυγίοις νέμεσθαι. Καὶ ὑλῶδεά τε πολλὰ καὶ πολύθηρον. Τὴν δὲ πρὸς ὠκεῖον ἐπὶ ἄρκτον ἰόντων, χειμερινήν τε καὶ νιφετώδεα· ὥστε πρὸς τὰς τινὰς ἐκ τῆς Εὐξείνης πόντου λέγει Νέαρχος κάρτα ὀλίγην ὁδὸν διελθόντας, ἐντυχῆν κατ' ὁδὸν ἰόντι τῆς Περσίδος, καὶ θύμῳ γενέσθαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, καὶ εἰπεῖν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ τὴν βραχύτητα. Σχίσιοις δὲ πρὸς οἰκοῖν ὅτι εἰσὶν Οὐξιοί, λέλεκτά μοι· κατάπερ Μάρδοι μὲν Πέρσῃσι πρὸς τεχέας οἰκέεσι, λησάι καὶ οὔτοι· Κοσσαῖοι δὲ, Μήδοισι. Καὶ ταῦτα πάντα τὰ ἔθνη ἡμέρωσεν Ἀλέξανδρος, χειμῶνος ὥρῃ ἐπιπεσὼν αὐτοῖσιν, ὅτε ἄβατον σφῶν τὴν χώραν ἦγον. Καὶ πόλιν ἐπέκτισε, τῇ μὴ νομάδας εἶναι, ἀλλὰ ἀροτῆρας καὶ γῆς ἐργάτας, καὶ ἔχεν ὑπὲρ ὅτων δειμαίνοντες, μὴ κακὰ

the gulph of Persia is sandy, unproductive, and parched with heat. The district farther inland towards the north and north east has a climate of more moderate temperature; for here the soil is covered with verdure, the plains are well watered, and vines, as well as other fruit trees, except the olive, are found in abundance. Here [the nobility and the sovereign] have their parks, the rivers are pure and limpid, the lakes [of which there are several] are covered with water-fowl, cattle of all sorts are pastured on the plain, and the forests furnish abundance of animals for the chase.

There is still a district farther to the north, where the climate is cold, and the mountains are covered with snow: but this is so far north, that some ambassadors, who came from the neighbourhood of the Euxine sea, and who joined the army on its march to Persia, had performed a journey of no great extent, as they informed Alexander, to his great surprise.

The Uxii border on Soofiana, as I have already mentioned, and the Mardi on Persia; both nations of plunderers. The Cossæi lie nearer Media; but all these tribes were subdued by Alexander, who entered their country in winter, when they thought it impracticable. After their reduction, he collected them into cities, in order to reclaim them from a life of vagrancy; and, by compelling them to become cultivators instead of robbers, they had a property of their own to de-

* This description is characteristic of Persia at the present day; and the wines of Sherauze are celebrated throughout the east, corresponding with the vines of Nearchus, and which he seems to mention with pleasure wherever they occurred.

† If this has any meaning, it must be referred to

Al Gebal, the mountainous part of Media, or possibly Armenia. But these provinces are not a part of Persia, though comprehended in the kingdom of Persia; they would likewise be nearer the Caspian than the Euxine sea, and the journey of the ambassadors could not be short.

ἀλλήλους ἐργάσονται. Ἐνθενδὲ τὴν Συσίων γῆν παρήμευε καὶ ὁ στρατός. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔκετι ὡσαύτως καὶ ἀπρεκέως λέγει Νέαρχος ὅτι ἐστὶν οἱ Φράσαι, πλὴν γε δὴ τὰς ὁρμῆς τε καὶ τὸ μήκος τῆ πλώε. Τὴν χώραν τε ἧδ' ἑνεαγῶδά τε εἶναι τὴν πολλήν, καὶ ῥηχίῃσιν ἐπὶ μέγα ἐς τὸν πόντον ἐπέχουσιν καὶ ταύτην σφαλερὴν ἐγκαθ-
ορμίζουσαι^α πελαγίοισιν ὧν σφίσι τὴν κομιδὴν τὸ πολὺ γίνεσθαι. Ὁρμηθῆναι μὲν δὴ ἐκ τῆ ποταμῆ τῶν ἐκβολῶν, ἵνα περὶ ἡλίουθῃσαν, ἐπὶ τοῖσιν ὄροις τῇ Περσίδος ὕδωρ δὲ ἐμβάλλεσθαι πέντε ἡμερῶν. Οὐκ ἔφασκον γὰρ εἶναι ὕδωρ οἱ καθηγουμένοις τῆ πλώε.

XLI. Σταδίους δὲ πεντακοσίους κομι-
θέντες, ὁρμίζονται ἐπὶ στόματι λίμνης ἰχθυώδους, ἣ ἔνομα Κατάδερβις. Καὶ νησὶς ἐπὴν τῷ στόματι^α Μαργάσανα τῇ νησίδι ἔνομα. Ἐνθενδὲ δὲ ὑπὸ τὴν ἑὴν ἐκπλώσαντες, κατὰ βράχια ἐκομίζοντο ἐπὶ μῆς νεώς. Πασσάλιοι δὲ ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν πεπηγόσιν ἀπεδηλῶτο τὰ βράχια, κατὰπερ ἐν τῷ μεσσηγύς Λευκάδος τε νῆσῳ Ἰαθμῷ καὶ Ἀκαρνανίῃς ἀποδέδεικται σημεῖα τοῖσι ναυτιλλομένοις, τῆ μὴ ἐποκέλλειν ἐν τοῖσι βράχεσι τὰς νεάς. Ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν κατὰ Λευκάδα ψαμμώδεα ὄντα, καὶ τοῖσιν ἐποκέλασι ταχέϊαν τὴν ὑπονόησιν ἐνδοῖ. Καὶ δὲ πηλὸς ἐστὶν ἐφ' ἐκάτερα τῆ πλεομένης βαθὺς καὶ ἰλυώδης^α.

fend, instead of molesting their neighbours by their inroads.

From the A'rofis the fleet proceeded along the coast of Soosiana. But of this passage Nearchus informs us that he cannot speak with certainty; he therefore states only his anchorages, and the length of each day's course, for here [the coast was low and] the shoal extended a great way out from the shore, so that anchoring at all was dangerous, and their course was generally through the open sea, without daring to approach the land.

Before they moved therefore from the mouth of the A'rofis, they took in water for five days, as their pilots informed them, that during an interval of that length no water could be obtained.

XLI. As soon as their water was completed, the fleet proceeded 500 stadia to Kataderbis. Kataderbis is a bay, with an island at its entrance, called Margástan; the whole bay is remarkable for the quantity of ^b fish it produces. From Kataderbis the course was through a channel surrounded by shoals on both sides, which the fleet passed in a line of single ships. The shoals were marked out by stakes fixed along the margin, in the same manner as the channel between Leukas and Acarnania is defined by marks, to prevent accidents to those who cross the straits. But at Leukas the shoal is a sand, and if a vessel gets on shore, she is eased off again without difficulty; but upon this shoal in Soosiana the bottom is ^c mud

The country
Dorghestan.
The island
Deree bouna.

^b Between the A'rofis and Kataderbis lies the shoal Barkan or Bahr-el-Kan; it is still celebrated for its fishery.

^c The term used by Ptolemy is κόλπος σπλωτός, *stake bay*; by Marcian, κόλπος σπλωτός, *muddy bay*; both characters agreeing with this account of Arrian's.

ὥστε ὑδραὶ μὴ μηχανῇ ἐποκείλασιν ἢ ἀποσώθῃναι. Οἱ τε γὰρ κοντοὶ κατὰ τῷ πηλῷ δύνοντες, αὐτοὶ ὑδρὶ τι ἐπωφέλου, ἀνθρώπων τε ἐκβῆναι τῷ ἀπῶσαι τὰς νέας ἐς τὰ πλεόμενα, ἄπορον ἐγένετο. Ἐδνον γὰρ κατὰ τῷ πηλῷ ἐς τε ἐπὶ τὰ σῆθρα. Οὕτω δὲ χαλεπῶς διεκπλώσαντες σάδεις ἐξακοσίαις, κατὰ ναῦν ἕκαστοι ὀρμισθέντες, ἐνταῦθα δέπνου ἐμνήσθησαν. Τὴν νύκτα δὲ ἤδη κατὰ βάθρα ἔπλεον, καὶ τὴν ἐφεξῆς ἡμέρην ἐς τε ἐπὶ βελυτόν, καὶ ἦλθον σάδεις ἐνακοσίαις. Καὶ καθωρμίσθησαν ἐπὶ τῷ σώματος τῷ Εὐφράτῃ, πρὸς κόμην τινὶ τῆς Βαβυλωνίης χώρας· ὄνομα δὲ αὐτῇ Διριδωτίς. Ἴνα λιθαινωτόν τε ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμπορίας γῆς οἱ ἐμποροὶ ἀγινέουσι, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὅσα θυμιάματα ἢ Ἀράβων γῆ φέρει. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῷ σώματος τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ἐς τε Βαβυλῶνα, πλεῖν λέγει Νεάρχος σάδεις εἶναι ἐς τρισχιλίας καὶ τριακοσίας.

XLII. Ἐνταῦθα ἀγγέλλεται Ἀλέξανδρον ἐπὶ Σώσων σέλλεσθαι. Ἐνθεν καὶ αὐτοὶ τὸ ὀπίσω ἔπλεον, ὡς κατὰ τὸν Πασιτίγρην ποταμὸν ἀναπλώσαντες, συμμίζαν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ. Ἐπλεον δὲ τὸ ἔμπροσθεν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τὴν γῆν τὴν Σισίδα ἔχοντες. Καὶ παραπλέουσι λίμνην, ἐς ἣν ὁ Τίγρης ἐσβάλλει ποταμός· ὃς ῥέων ἐξ Ἀρμενίων παρὰ πόλιν Νῖνον, πάλαι

and ouze, so that, if a vessel strikes, there are no means of relief. For if a pole is put out, it finds no resistance, but sinks deep into the yielding mud; and if the people are put over board to heave her off, they find no bottom to support them.

It was with great difficulty that the vessels were conducted through this passage one by one; when they came to an anchor in the channel at the end of ^d six hundred stadia, and the people took their refreshment on board. But they moved again the same night; and now, finding deep water, pushed on during the whole of the night and the following day, till evening, when they reached Diridôtis at Terêdon. the ^e mouth of the Euphrates, after a course of nine hundred stadia. Diridôtis is a village of Babylonia, and a mart which is the centre of the commerce of Arabia, and whither the merchants bring the frankincense, with all the gums and odours that country produces. From this mouth of the Euphrates up to Babylon the [computed] distance is ^f three thousand three hundred stadia.

XLII. At this place they received an account that Alexander was on his march to Soofa. They therefore sailed *back* again, with the intention of going up the Pasitigris to join the army on its route. River of On their return, they sailed with Soofiana ^{Ram Hormos.} on their left, and [first] passing a lake ^{The Dejele, or Shat-el-Arab.} which the Tigris formed at its mouth, [they crossed the shoals again towards the Pasitigris.] The Tigris comes out of Armenia, and passing Ninus or Nineveh in

^d The whole of this course, from Kataderbis to Diridôtis, is across two shoals; the first now called Karabah, and the second Ala-Meidan, or the great flat.

^e This is in reality the Khore Abdillah, which is still considered by the natives as the ancient

mouth of the Euphrates: but that river now joins the Tigris at Khorna, 130 miles from the sea.

^f 3300 stadia make little more than 200 miles English; the real distance by the river is more than 400. But may not Nearchus calculate this distance by stadia of eight to a mile?

ποτὲ μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, τὴν μέσσην
 ἐαυτῇ τε καὶ τῇ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ (ἣν
 Μεσοποταμίην ἐπὶ τῷδε κληΐζεσθαι) ποι-
 εῖν. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς λίμνης ἐς αὐτὸν τὸ πο-
 ταμὸν ἀνάπλες σταδίοι ἐξακόσιοι. Ἴνα
 καὶ κώμη τῆς Συσίδος, ἣν καλέουσιν Ἀ-
 γινιν. Αὕτη δὲ ἀπέχει Σέσων σταδίας ἐς
 πεντακοσίας· μῆκος τῷ παράπλευ τῆς
 Συσίων γῆς ἐς τε ἐπὶ στόμα τῷ Πασπί-
 γριδος ποταμῷ, σταδίοι δισχίλιοι. Ἐν-
 θένδε κατὰ τὸν Πασπίγγριν ἄνω ἔπλεον
 διὰ χώρας οἰκαμένης καὶ εὐδαίμονος. Ἀνα-
 πλώσαντες δὲ σταδίας ἐς πεντήκοντα καὶ
 ἑκατὸν, αὐτῷ ὁρμίζονται, προσμένοντες
 ἕσπινας ἐσάλκει Νέαρχος, σκεψομένους
 ἵνα ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔη. Αὐτὸς δὲ ἔθνε θεοῖς
 τοῖς σωτήρσι, καὶ ἀγῶνα ἐποίησε καὶ ἡ
 στρατιὴ ἡ ναυτικὴ πᾶσα ἐν εὐθυμίῃσιν ἦν.
 Ὡς δὲ προσάγων ἤδη Ἀλέξανδρος ἡγ-
 γέλλετο, ἔπλεον ἤδη αὖθις ἐς τὸ ἄνω
 κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ πρὸς τῇ σχεδίῃ
 ὁρμίζονται, ἐφ' ἣ τὸ σράτευμα διαβιβά-

its course, which was formerly a great
 and flourishing city, enclosed one side of
 that tract which is called Mesopotamia,
 as the Euphrates encircles it on the other.
 At the distance of six hundred stadia from
 the lake at the mouth of the Tigris, lies
 a village called Aginis: this village is in
 Soosiana, [on the east of the Tigris] and
 is reckoned at five hundred stadia from
 Soofa itself. [This village, however, they
 did not visit, for they did not enter the
 lake, but only ^h failed by it;] and their
 course back again across the shoals to
 the Pasitigris was two thousand stadia.

Upon arriving at the ⁱ Pasitigris, they
 sailed up that river, through a populous
 and well cultivated country for one hun-
 dred and fifty stadia, and there, came to
 an anchor, waiting for the return of the
 messengers, whom Nearchus sent up the
 country to learn tidings of the King's
 approach.

Here Nearchus sacrificed to the gods
 who had prospered his expedition, and
 celebrated the usual games; and here the
 whole body of his people enjoyed them-
 selves in security, [and in triumph for the
 conclusion of their labours.]

As soon as they learnt that Alexander
 and the army were approaching, they
 continued their progress up the river till
 they reached the bridge of boats which

^s Nearchus did not go up the Tigris, and must therefore speak from report. What place is meant it is now impossible to say; it may be Zeinè, as D'Anville supposes. But I should rather imagine that it was a village at the mouth of Soweib river, by which there is a water communication between the Tigris and Soofa, by means of a canal called Meferkan. But the distance is totally incompatible. The lake is the mouth of the Shat-el-Arab.

^h παραπλεύσει.

ⁱ The Pasitigris is ascertained for the river of Ram Hormoz by comparing it with the campaign

of Antigonus and Eúmenes, with the march of Timour, and the high road from Persis to Soofa. In giving this detail of the return from Diridòtis to the Pasitigris, I have changed the site of Aginis in compliance with Schneider. The whole is now consistent, yet still the 2000 stadia attributed to this return is a distance too great; but the river of Ram Hormoz falls into a bay: the extent of this bay up to the river I cannot precisely ascertain; it may qualify the distance, but still it is in excess.

σαν ἔμελλεν Ἀλεξάνδρος εἰς Σῦσα. Ἐνταῦθα ἀνέμιχθη ὁ στρατός, καὶ θυσίαι πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐθύοντο ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν τε καὶ ἀνδράπων τῇ σωτηρίῃ καὶ ἀγῶνες ἐποίεοντο. Καὶ Νέαρχος ὅποι παραφανίσῃ τῆς στρατῆς, ἀνθεσί τε καὶ ταινίησιν ἐβάλλετο. Ἐνθα καὶ χρυσῷ στεφάνῳ στεφανῶνται ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου Νέαρχος τε καὶ Λεοννάτος· Νέαρχος μὲν, ἐπὶ τῇ ναυτικῇ τῇ σωτηρίῃ· Λεοννάτος δὲ, ἐπὶ τῇ νίκῃ, ἣν Ὠρεΐτας τε ἐνίκησε καὶ τὰς Ὠρεΐταις προσακείμενας βαρβάρους. Οὕτω μὲν ἀπεσώθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκ τοῦ ἰνδοῦ τῶν ἐκβολῶν ὁρμηθεὶς ὁ στρατός.

XLIII. Τὰ δὲ ἐν δεξιᾷ τῆς ἐρυθρῆς θαλάσσης ὑπὲρ τὴν Βαβυλωνίην, Ἀραβίη ἢ πολλή ἐστι. Καὶ ταύτης τὰ μὲν καλῆκε ἐς τε ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν τὴν κατὰ Φοινίκην τε καὶ τὴν Παλαιστίνην Συρίην πρὸς διδυμένην δὲ ἡλίῃ ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν εἰσω θάλασσαν Αἰγύπτιοι τῇ Ἀραβίῃ ὁμορεύουσι. Κατὰ δὲ Αἰγύπτιον ἐσέχων ἐκ τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης κόλπος, δῆλον ποιεῖ ὅτι ἐνεκά γε τῆ σύρρην εἶναι τὴν ἔξω θάλασσαν, περίπλους αὖ ἢ ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος ἐς τὸν κόλπον τῶτον ἐσέχοντα ὡς ἐπ' Αἰγύπτιον. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐ τις παρέπλωσε ταύτῃ ἑδαμῶς ἀνθρώπων ὑπὸ καύματος καὶ ἐρημίας, εἰ μὴ τινὲς γε πελάγιοι κο-

Alexander was to pass on his march to Soofa; here the naval forces joined the army; and here the sacrifices were repeated for the preservation of the fleet, and those who had embarked in it. Wherever Nearchus appeared, garlands and flowers were showered upon him, and crowns of gold were bestowed upon him for the execution of his commission, and upon Leonnatus for his victory over the Oritæ, and their allies. Thus was the fleet of Alexander conducted in safety from the Indus to its destination.

XLIII. All the country beyond ¹ Babylonia, ¹ west of the gulph of Persia, is Arabia; and the whole is Arabia, quite across the continent to the sea of Phœnicia and Palestine, which is a Syrian province. On the west, the limits of Arabia join Egypt, between the Mediterranean and the Red sea; and the Red sea communicating with the Erythræan ocean, and coming up to Egypt, proves manifestly that the navigation is open between Egypt and Babylon. But such is the violence of the heat, and the desert state of the country, that no one has hitherto accomplished this circumnavigation, unless some who have passed from one gulph to the other, [not by ad-

¹ Arrian extends the name of Babylonia quite down to the gulph of Persia; for thus (p. 65.) he says, Diridôtis is a village of Babylonia. And in the present instance, he means to say that all which is not Babylonia, is Arabia, from the gulph of Persia to the Mediterranean sea. This is nearly the

truth at the present day.

¹ *ἰς δεξιᾷ* it is in the original; but, to understand this, we must suppose Nearchus at the head of the gulph, and ready to sail down again to its mouth. See the same usage of *ἰς δεξιᾷ* in the following page.

μιζόμενοι. Ἀλλὰ οἱ ἐπ' Αἰγύπτῃ καὶ ἐς
Σῶσα ἀποσωθέντες τῆς στρατῆς τῆς Καμ-
βύσεως, καὶ οἱ παρὰ Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Λάγῳ
πρὸς Σέλευκον τὸν Νικάνορα σαλόντες ἐς
Βαβυλῶνα, διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίης χώρας, ἰοθ-
μὸν τινα διαπορευθέντες ἐν ἡμέρῃσιν ὀκτώ
ταῖς πάσαις, ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἐρήμην χώραν
ἐπὶ ἡλίου ἐπὶ καμήλων σκαδὴ ἐλαύνοντες,
ὕδωρ τε σφιν ἐπὶ τῶν καμήλων φέροντες,
καὶ νυκτοπορεύοντες. Τὰς γὰρ ἡμέρας
ὑπάρχοντες ἀνέχεσθαι διὰ καῦμα ἀδύνατοι
ἦσαν. Τότε δὲ τὰ γε ἐπέκεινα ταύ-
της τῆς χώρας (ὅτινα ἰοθμὸν ἀποφάνο-
μεν) ἐκ τῆς κόλπης τῆς Ἀραβίης κατήκοντα
ἐς τὴν ἐρυθρὴν θάλασσαν, οἰκούμενα εἴ-
ναι, ὅποτε τὰ πρὸς ἄρκτον μᾶλλον αὐτῶν
ἀνέχοντα ἐρημὰ τε ἐστὶ καὶ ψαμμώδεα.
Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀραβίης κόλπης τῆς
κατ' Αἰγύπτου ὁρμηθέντες ἄνθρωποι, ἐκ-
περιπλώσαντες τὴν πολλὴν Ἀραβίην, ἐλ-
θόντες ἐς τὴν κατὰ Σῶσά τε καὶ Πέρσας
θάλασσαν, ἐς τοσόνδε ἄρα περιπλώσαν-
τες τῆς Ἀραβίης, ἐς ὅσον σφίσι τὸ ὕδωρ
ἐπὶ ἡμέρας τὸ ἐμβληθὲν ἐς τὰς νέας, ἐπει-
ὸν ἀπέπνευσαν. Ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος τε
ἔστειλεν Ἀλέξανδρος, ὥς ἐπὶ μή-
κιστον πλέοντας, ἐν δεξιᾷ τῇ ἐρυθρῇ θά-
λάσσῃ, γινώσκειν τὰς ταύτης χώρας, οἷοι
νῆας μὲν τινὰς κατεσκεύαζαντο, ἐν τῇ
παράπλῳ κειμένας, καὶ πᾶς καὶ τῆς ἡμέρας

hering to the coast, but] by standing out
into the open sea¹.

The remains of Cambyses's army, which
escaped out of Egypt back to Babylon,
and the force sent by the first Ptolemy
against Seleucus Nicanor, both passed a
part of Arabia; but it required a march
of eight days, during which both the
army, and the water for its support, were
conveyed on camels through a country
totally parched and desert. They were
obliged likewise to move in the night
only, because the heat of the day was in-
supportable: but if the tract of country,
which I call the ^m Isthmus, between the
gulph of Arabia and that of Persia is so
desert and so little inhabited, the part
farther north is an utter sand, without
any means of support whatsoever.

Some indeed have attempted the pas-
sage from Egypt to Soofa and Persia, by
going down the gulph of Arabia; but
they could proceed no farther on the
coast of Arabia than they were enabled
by such a stock of water as they could
take on board; and when that failed
them, they were obliged to return: while
those whom Alexander sent down from
Babylon, and who proceeded farthest with
Arabia on their right, discovered only
part of the coast, and a few of the islands
which lay in their course; but not one
of them ventured to pass that great cape

¹ Arrian mentions this so slightly, that one should
think he had heard little of the passage from Egypt
to India by the monsoon of Hippalus: and this is
extraordinary, as Arrian lived in the reign of A-
drian, and Hippalus introduced the knowledge of
the monsoon probably in the time of Claudius.

^m It is plain that Arrian means to say, that the

army of Ptolemy passed the desert from one gulph
to the other in eight days. But this is impossible;
for the distance is seven hundred miles, and the
post (most probably on a dromedary) is eleven days
on its journey. The army of Ptolemy must have
passed only a part of this desert, through Idumæa
to the Euphrates.

τῆς Ἀραβίης προσέχον. Τὴν δὲ ἄκρην, ἣντινα καλάντικρυ τῆς Καρμανίης ἀνέχουσιν λέγει φανῆναι σφισι Νέαρχος, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅστις ὑπερβαλὼν, ἐπικάμψαι ἐς τὸ ἐπὶ θάτερα δυνατός ἐγένετο. Δοκέω δὲ ὡς ἔπερ πλωτά τε ἦν καὶ βαδισὰ ταύτη, ὑπ' Ἀλεξάνδρου ἂν τῆς πολυπραγμοσύνης ἐξηλέγετο πλωτά τε καὶ βαδισὰ εἶντα. Ἄνων δὲ ὁ Λίβυς ἐκ Καρχηδόνης ὁρμηθεὺς, ὑπὲρ μὲν Ἡρακλείους σήλας ἐξέπλωσεν ἔξω ἐς τὸν πόντον, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τὴν Λιβύην γῆν ἔχων. Καὶ ἐς τε μὲν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ὁ πλόος αὐτῷ ἐγένετο, τὰς πάσας πέντε καὶ τριήκοντα ἡμέρας. Ὡς δὲ δὴ ἐς μεσημβρίην ἐξετρέπετο, πολλῆσιν ἀμνηχανίῃσιν ἐνετύγχανεν, ὕδατός τε ἀπορίῃ καὶ καύματι ἐπιφλέγοντι, καὶ ῥύαξι πυρὸς ἐς τὸν πόντον ἐμβάλλουσιν. Ἀλλ' ἡ Κυρήνη γὰρ ἡ Λιβύης ἐν τοῖς ἐρημοτέροις πεπαλισμένη, ποιώδης τέ ἐστι καὶ μαλθακὴ, καὶ ἐνυδρὸς, καὶ ἄλσος καὶ λαμῶνες καὶ καρπῶν παντοίων καὶ κτηνῶν πάμφορος, ἐς τε ἐπὶ τῷ σιλφίῳ τὰς ἐκφύσεις. Ὑπὲρ δὲ τὸ σίλφιον, τὰ ἄνω αὐτῆς ἔρημα καὶ ψαμμώδες.

Οὗτός μοι ὁ λόγος ἀναγεγράφθω, φέρων καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς Ἀλεξάνδρου τὸν Φιλίππου, τὸν Μακεδόνα.

which lies opposite to Karmania, and Muffendon. which Nearchus saw upon his entrance into the gulph of Persia.

But if any means of intercourse, either by land or sea, could have been effected, I have no doubt but that the busy spirit of Alexander would have tempted him to explore it to the utmost.

Hanno the African undertook an expedition from Carthage into the Atlantic ocean, beyond the pillars of Hercules; and, sailing with Africa on his left, proceeded towards the ^{The straits of Gibraltar.} east for five and thirty days: but as soon as he was obliged to change his course to the south, the difficulties he experienced were insurmountable. Want of water, intolerable heat, and torrents of fire rolling into the sea, put a stop to his farther progress; and yet Kurênê, which is a colony established in the most desolate part of Africa, abounds with pasture, and has a fine soil well watered; and, besides its produce of all sorts of fruits and cattle, is celebrated for its benzoin, [which arrives at a greater perfection there than in any other part of the world;] but beyond the country where this drug is found, the rest is all a sandy desert.

This is the second work I have undertaken relative to Alexander the Macedonian, the son of Philip.

^a To the east we now know that it could not be, but to the south, or to the west of the south for several days, after passing the straits of Gibraltar. But this is Hanno's own language in his Periplus; and, by the mention of this circumstance, with the fiery torrents which caused him to return, it is evident that Arrian had seen that Journal.

^o In reviewing this work of Arrian now for the third time, I have found reason to change the posi-

tion of two places only. Aginis I have now carried into the Shat-el-Arab, in conformity to D'Anville and Schneider; and O'rgana to L'Arek, instead of Ormus. On this last point, however, I am not confident; but I have identified the Pasitigris with the river of Ram Hormoz on the clearest evidence. In these three points only the present work differs from the first edition.

ΠΕΡΙΠΛΟΥΣ
THE
ΕΡΥΘΡΑΣ ΘΑΛΑΣΣΗΣ.

AFRICA.

ΤΩΝ ἀποδεδειγμένων ὁρμῶν τῆς Ἐρυθρᾶς θαλάσσης, καὶ τῶν περὶ αὐτὴν ἐμπορίων, πρῶτος ἐστὶ λιμὴν τῆς Αἰγύπτου, Μυὸς ὁρμος. Μετὰ δὲ αὐτὸν εἰσπλεόντων ἀπὸ χιλίων ὀκτακοσίων σταδίων, ἐν δεξιᾷ ἡ Βερενίκη. Ἀμφοτέρων οἱ λιμένες, ἐν τῷ ἐσχάτῳ τῆς Αἰγύπτου κόλποι δὲ τῆς Ἐρυθρᾶς θαλάσσης κείνται. Τέτων ἐκ μὲν τῶν δεξιῶν ἀπὸ Βερενίκης συναφῆς ἡ Τισεβαρική χώρα ἐστὶ. Τὰ μὲν παρὰ θαλάσσαν, ἰχθυοφάγων μάνδραις οἰκοδομημέναις ἐν σενώμασιν, καὶ σποράδην δὲ οἰκῶνται· τὰ δὲ μεσόγεια, βαρβάρων καὶ τῶν μετ' αὐτοὺς Ἀγριοφάγων καὶ Μοσχοφάγων, κατὰ τυραννίδα νεμομένων. Οἷς

THE PERIPLUS
OR NAVIGATION
OF
THE ERYTHREAN SEA.

PART THE FIRST.

AFRICA.

THE Egyptians have several ^a established harbours and marts on the coasts of the Red sea, but the first of these is Muos Hormus. Next to Muos Hormus is Be-<sup>Beled el Har-
beth.</sup> renikè, at the distance of eighteen hundred stadia, as you proceed down the gulph, with the African shore on the right: both these harbours lie at the extremity of Egypt, and have severally the advantage of a bay. Lower down than Berenike, on the right lies the level tract on the coast called ^b Tisebàrikè, and here is the residence of the Ikthuthophagi, whose chief subsistence is fish; their habitations are ^c cabins in the clefts and caverns of the rocks, and they live in separate families, without any form of a community. Other barbarous tribes, as the ^d Agriophagi and Moskhophagi, possess the interior; but these have a

^a ἀποδιδιγμένῳ is rendered by Stuckius and Hudfon *insignes et celebres*: but it signifies, I apprehend, *regularly appointed by government*; like ὄρμος νόμιμος, ἐμπορίον νόμιμον. So Stephanus in voce χρόνῳ ἀποδιδιγμένῳ, *times appointed by law, custom, or usage*. See also Budæus, p. 276.

^b Teez-u-bareek is said to mean *low and flat* both in Perfic and Arabic: if so, Tisebàrikè may mean the low tract between the mountains and the sea, like the Tehama in Arabia. But the adjective form of βαρική, like Λαρκή, Ἰνδική, &c. makes it

rather referable to *bahr*, the *sea*, or *seacoast*, as the bahr-nagash is king of the coast.

^c The magalia or mapalia of the Numidians, or merely natural caves or artificial excavations; for the Ikthuthophagi are Trôglodytes, who have their name from this sort of residence, and who, changing their situation with the season, to avoid the fly, consequently never build.

^d Probably Ἀγριοφάγοι should be Ἀκριδοφάγοι, *locust-eaters*; Μοσχοφάγοι, *veal-eaters*.

ἐπίκειται κατὰ νότον μεσόγειος, ἀπὸ τῶν πρὸς δυσὶν μερῶν, * * * της μικρόν. Μετὰ δὲ τὰς Μοσχόφους ἐπὶ θαλάσσης μικρὸν ἐμπόριον ἐστίν, ἀπέχον τῶν πέρας τῆς ἀνακομιδῆς σάδης περὶ τετρακισχίλις, Πτολεμαῖς ἢ τῶν θηρῶν λεγομένη, ἀφ' ἧς οἱ ἐπὶ Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ θηρευθέντες ἐνέβησαν. Ἐχει δὲ τὸ ἐμπόριον χελώνην ἀληθινὴν καὶ χερσαίαν ὀλίγην, καὶ λευκὴν μικροτέραν τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς. Εὐρίσκεται δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ ποτὶ μὲν ἐλέφας ὀλίγος, ὅμοιος τῷ ² Ἀδελτικῷ. Ὁ δὲ τόπος ἀλίμενος, καὶ σκάφαις μόνον τὴν ἀποδρομὴν ἔχων. Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Πτολεμαίδα τὴν τῶν θηρῶν, ἀπὸ σάδιων ὡς τρισχιλίων, ἐμπόριον ἐστὶ νόμιμον ἢ Ἀδελαί, κείμενον ἐν κόλπῳ βαθεῖ, κατ' αὐτὸν τὸν νότον. Οὗ πρόκειται νῆσος, Ὀρεινὴ λεγομένη, τῇ μὲν ἐσώτατῃ κόλπῳ, σάδης ὡς ἐς πέντε ἔχουσα διακοσίους ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν μερῶν παρακειμένη ἔχουσα τὴν ἡπειρον. Ἐν ἣ ἦν ὁρμῇ τὰ καταγόμενα πλοῖα, διὰ τὰς ἐκ τῆς γῆς καταδρομάς. Πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ὥρμαι κατ' αὐτὸν τὸν ἐσώτατον κόλπον ἐν τῇ Διοδώρου λεγομένῃ νήσῳ, παρ' αὐτὴν τὴν ἡπει-

form of government, as subject to their respective chiefs: and farther inland is the country of * * * towards the west. Upon the coast below the Moskhóphagi there is a small mart, called Ptolemáis Epithéras, four thousand stadia from [Bereniké] the port established for the reception of oriental commodities; and from Ptolemáis the hunters proceeded into the country who used to procure elephants for the King. The true land tortoise is found here, which is small and white, with a shell proportionate to the animal; and here also is the elephant of an inferior size, like those obtained at Adooli: but there is no harbour here, the vessels lie in an open road, and the articles procured are brought off in boats.

At the distance of three thousand stadia below Ptolemáis Epithéras, you arrive at Adooli, an established mart, which lies in a deep bay towards the south; and at the distance of two hundred stadia, in front of the harbour, is the island called ^h Oreinè, in the inmost recess of the bay, enclosed on both sides by the surrounding shores. At this island the vessels now anchor, that they may avoid the intrusion of the natives from the continent. They used formerly to lie at another island nearer shore, called Diodôrus, still deeper in the

The bay of Mafuah.

* τὸ πέρας Gelenius. ** Stuckius. τῶν Hudfon.

² Ἀδελτικῷ Gelenius.

* The name of the country missing in the text should probably be Nubia or Ethiopia. Strabo has Tēnefis nearly in this situation.

^f Ptolemáis Thêrôn or Epi-Thêras is probably in the bay south of Ras Ageeg.

^g It is Ἀδελτικῷ in the original text, which Hudfon reads Ἀδελτικῷ, against which there is no objection, but that we know nothing of the small elephant at Adooli.

^h Ὀρεινὴ implies rocky or mountainous; and

such is the island to which Lord Valentia has given his own name.

ⁱ Lord Valentia's survey gives a large extent to the bay of Mafuah towards the south; and his Oreinè or Valentia lies in the most southern part. His Lordship supposes Toualhout to be the islet where the Greeks first traded; but the description of the isle of Diodôrus, still deeper in the bay than Oreinè, does not correspond. By reference to Oreinè, Adooli lay far to the south of Arkeeko.

ρον, ἐχέσῃ περὶ τὴν διάβασιν, δι' ἧς οἱ κατοικῶντες βάρβαροι κατέτρεχον τὴν νῆσον. Καὶ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ἐν τῇ Ὀρεινῇ ἡπειρὸν, ἀπὸ σαδίων ἑκοσι τῆς θαλάσσης, ἐστὶν ἡ Ἀδουλί κώμη σύμμετρος. Ἀφ' ἧς εἰς μὲν Κολοὴν μεσόγειον πῶλιν, καὶ πρῶτον ἐμπόριον τῷ ἐλέφαντος, ὁδὸς ἐστὶν ἡμερῶν τριῶν. Ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης εἰς αὐτὴν τὴν μητρόπολιν Ἀξαμίτην λεγόμενοι, ἄλλων ἡμερῶν πέντε. Εἰς δὲ ὃν ὁ πᾶς ἐλέφας ἀπὸ τῆς πέραν τῆς Νείλου φέρεται, διὰ τῆς λεγομένης Κυηαίης, ἐκείθεν δὲ εἰς Ἀδελί. Τὸ μὲν ἔν ὅλον πλῆθος τῶν φονευομένων ἐλεφάντων ἢ ῥινοκεράτων, περὶ τὰς ἀνω νέμεται τόπας, σπανίως δὲ ποτε καὶ ἐν τῷ παρὰ θαλάσσαν, περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν Ἀδελί θεωρεῖται. Πρόκεινται δὲ τῷ ἐμπορίῳ καὶ κατὰ πέραν, ἄλλα ἡῖσι μικρὰ ἐκ δεξιῶν ἀμμιναὶ πλείονες, Ἀλαλαίῃς λεγόμεναι, χελώνη ἔχουσα τὴν εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον φερομένην, ἀπὸ τῶν ἰχθυοφάγων. Καὶ ἀπὸ σαδίων ὡσεὶ ὀκτακοσίων, κόλπος ἕτερος βαθύτατος, οὗ κατὰ τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἐν δεξιῇ ἀμμος ἐστὶν πολλὴ κεχυμένη, καὶ ἧς ἐν βάθει κεχωσμένος εὕρεσκειται ὁ ὀψιανὸς λίθος, ἐν ἐκείῃ μόνῃ τοπικῶς γεννώμενος. Βασιλεῖαι δὲ τῶν τόπων τούτων, ἀπὸ τῶν Μοχοφάγων μέχρι τῆς ἄλλης Βαρβαρίας, Ζωσκάλης, ἀκριβὲς μὲν τῷ

bay; but this is approachable from the continent [at low water,] and the natives frequently came over to the injury of the merchants.

On the continent, opposite to Oriné, lies Adooli, at the distance of twenty stadia from the shore. It is not a city, but a considerable village, through which the road passes to Koloë, three days journey inland; and at Koloë is the market for ivory. Five days journey farther inland from Koloë is Axōma, the capital of the kingdom, whither all the ivory is brought from beyond the Nile, through the province of ^k Sirè, and from Axōma to Adooli.

Almost the whole of the elephants and Rhinoceroses, that are killed by the hunters, have their haunts in the interior of the country; they are seldom seen near Adooli, or on the coast.

Upon proceeding to sea again from Adooli, there are a number of small sandy islands on the right, called ¹ Alalaioo, to Dahalak, which the Ikhtuóphagi bring their tortoise shell for sale. And eight hundred stadia lower down the coast, there is a very deep ^m bay, at the entrance of which there is a vast accumulation of sand on the right, and in the innermost part the Opfian stone is procured, which is found in no other place.

The king of this country is Zóskales, whose dominions extend from the Mokhóphagi to ⁿ Barbaria. He is a prince

^k Κυηαίη, from κυὸν, the dog, or dog-star; and seir is the Egyptian or Ethiopic term of the same signification.

¹ These are the islands of Dahalak, a very considerable group, of which Dahalak is the largest; they extend from the latitude of Masuah to the south-east.

^m This bay is noticed by De Castro, and was visited, but not explored, by Lord Valentia: he obtained here several specimens of what he supposes to be the Opfian stone. The distance from the bay of Masuah is somewhat short of that given by the Periplus.

ⁿ From Ras Ageeg perhaps, to Adel.

βίη, καὶ τῶν ³πλεόνων ἐξεχόμενος, γενναῖος δὲ περὶ τὰ λοιπὰ, καὶ γραμμάτων Ἑλληνικῶν ἔμπειρος. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τὰς τόπους τούτους ἱμάτια βαρβαρικά ἀγναφα τὰ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ γινόμενα, Ἀρσινοπικὰ σολαί, καὶ ἄβαλοι τόφοι χρωματινοί, καὶ λέντια, καὶ δικρόσσια, καὶ λιθίας ⁴υἰαλῆς πλέονα γένη, καὶ ἄλλης μορρίνης ⁵γινόμενης ἐν Διοσπόλει. Καὶ ὀρέχχαλκος, ὃ χρωῖται πρὸς κόσμον, καὶ εἰς συγκοπὴν ἀντὶ νομίσματος, καὶ μελίφθα χαλκὰ, εἰς τε ἔψησιν καὶ εἰς συγκοπὴν ψελίων καὶ περισκελίδων τισὶ τῶν γυναικῶν. Καὶ σίδηρος, ὁ δαπανώμενος εἰς τε λόγχας πρὸς τὰς ἐλέφαντας καὶ τὰ ἄλλα θηρία, καὶ τὰς πολέμους. Ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ πελύκια προχωρεῖ, καὶ σκέπαρνα, καὶ μάχαιραι, καὶ ποτήρια χαλκὰ τρογγύλα μεγάλα, καὶ δηνάριον ὀλίγον, πρὸς τὰς ἐπιδημῶντας, καὶ οἶνος Λαοδικηνὸς καὶ Ἰταλικὸς οὐ πολὺς, καὶ ἔλαιον οὐ πολὺ. Τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ ἀργυρώματα καὶ χρυσώματα, τοπικῶ ῥυθμῷ κατεσκευασμένα, καὶ ἱματίων ἀβόλλαι, καὶ ⁶καυνάκαι ἀπλοῖ. Οὐ ⁶πολλὰ δὲ ταῦτα. Ὀμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἑσῶ τόπων τῆς

superior to most, in the correctness of his life and conduct, liberal in his manners, and educated with a knowledge of Greek.

The imports into this country are,—undressed cloth of Egypt, made up for the natives,—robes manufactured at Arfinoë, [or °Suez,]—cloaks dyed,—linen,—striped cloths,—several sorts of flint glaſs;—murrhina or porcelane of Diópolis in lower Egypt;—Oreikhalkus, [a metal compounded of copper and other ingredients] which the natives use for ornaments, and which they cut into pieces for use instead of coin;—prepared P copper, of which the natives make utensils for the kitchen, bracelets and anklets for the women;—iron, for weapons and for the use of the hunters of elephants or rhinoceroses;—hatchets, adzes, chisels, and knives;—drinking vessels of brass [or copper] large and round;—denarii [that is a small quantity of specie] for the expences of the merchants who trade here;—Syrian and Italian wine, but in no great quantity; the same may be said of oil;—silver and gold plate for the king, made after the fashion of the country;—cloaks made up, and plain ⁹coverlids, or with the knap raised on one side only; but in no great quantity.—Some articles likewise are landed here ¹ for the trade with the interior of Arabia, as Indian

³ πλείονος Gél.

⁴ υἰαλῆς Gél.

⁵ γινόμενης Gél.

⁶ πολλὰ Stuckius.

° Suez is not on the site of Arfinoë, but its representative.

⁹ μελίφθα χαλκὰ, εἰς τε ἔψησιν, &c. Whether μελίφθα signifies brass prepared in a particular way, or whether it signifies the use it is put to in cookery, and refers to ἔψησιν, I cannot discover. It occurs in no lexicon but Schotti Thesaurus, where this passage is cited, but without any interpretation. It is found neither in Hesychius, Budæus, or Stevens.

⁹ Καυνάκαι ἀπλοῖ. The usage of ἀπλοῖς for plain cloth, or cloth of one colour, in opposition to ποικίλος or σκευαλάτος, is proved by the catalogue at Moosa, and confirmed by a passage in Arrian, De Venatione, cap. 3. sub fine.

¹ Ἐπὶ τῶν ἑσῶ τόπων τῆς Ἀραβικῆς [γῆς], not ex, as Hudson renders it: but they are articles evidently landed out of the fleet on its return from India.

Ἀραβικῆς, σίδηρος Ἰνδικός, καὶ τόμωμα, καὶ ὀθόνιον Ἰνδικὸν τὸ πλατύτερον, ἡ λεγομένη μοναχὴ, καὶ σαγματογῆναι, καὶ περιζώματα καὶ καυνάκαι καὶ μολόχιναι καὶ σινδόνες ὀλίγαι, καὶ λάκκος χρωμάτωνος. Φέρεται δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων ἐλέφας, καὶ ρινοκέρας. Τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα ἐκ τῆς Αἰγύπτου Φέρεται εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον τῆτο, ἀπὸ μηνὸς Ἰανουαρίου μέχρι τῆς Σεπτεμβρίου, ὃ ἐστίν, ἀπὸ Τυβί ἕως Θάψ. Εὐκαίρως δὲ ἀπὸ Αἰγύπτου ἀναγούσαι περὶ τὸν Σεπτεμβρίου μήνα. Ἦδη ἐπ' ἀνατολὴν ὁ Ἀραβικὸς κόλπος διατείνει, καὶ κατὰ τὸν Αὐαλίτην μάλιστα σενᾶται. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτας ὡς τετρακισχίλις, κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν ἡπείρου εἰς ἀνατολὴν πλεόντων, ἐστὶν ἄλλα ἐμπόρια βαρβαρικά, τὰ πέρα λεγόμενα· κείμενα μὲν κατὰ τὸ ἔξῃς, ἀγκυροβολοῖς δὲ καὶ σάλοις ἔχοντα τὰς ἡμέρας, κατὰ καιρὸς ἐπιτηδείας. Πρῶτος μὲν ὁ λεγόμενος Αὐαλίτης, κατ' ὃν καὶ σενώτατος ἐστὶν ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀραβικῆς εἰς τὸ πέραν διάπλους. Κατὰ τῆτον τὸν τόπον, μικρὸν ἐμπόριον ἐστὶν ὁ Αὐαλίτης, σχεδία καὶ σκάφαις εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ προσερχομένων. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν ὑαλὴ λιθία σύμμικτος, καὶ Διοσπολιτικῆς ἑμ-

iron, with a steel edge;—Indian cotton cloths of large width, fine cottons, and cotton for stuffing couches or beds;—^a common muslins and some of the finest forts;—sashes and coloured ^tlack.

The exports are confined to ivory and the horns of the rhinoceros.

The imports from Egypt come generally to this port between January and September, that is, from Tubi to Thoth; but the best season for the voyage is in September.

From the bay of Adooli the coast trends to the east; the narrowest passage of the straits is immediately previous to the bay called Abalites or Avalites: and from thence the course to the east is along the coast of Africa for four thousand stadia. The marts in this interval are called the ^u outer marts, as lying beyond the straits, and the country is styled Barbaria, [corresponding to the kingdom of Adel.] As you arrive at these places in succession, you find roads and anchorages in the ^x favourable season, but no harbours.

Of these, Avalites is the first: it lies Tajoura¹ close to the straits, where the passage to Arabia is shortest. It is a mart of no great importance, where you must anchor at a distance from the shore, and convey the articles of trade in boats or rafts.

The imports are, flint glass of various sorts, dipse or rob of grapes from Dióf-

^a Μολόχιναι, rendered usually muslins of the colour of mallows; but probably muslins specifically.

^t Λάκκος does not occur in the lexicons in this sense, but in Meurfus only, who renders it lack; and cites this passage with Mirepsus. Gum-lack is red, [χρυσάτινος] and used for japanning lacerated ware.

^u There is much confusion in the usage of this expression in the original; for it is written τάραρα,

τάραρα, τὰ and τῶν πέρα: but all without doubt ought to be τὰ πέρα, the marts beyond the straits; an appellation which embraces all the marts quite to India.

^x That is, during the S. W. monsoon, κατὰ καιρὸς ἐπιτηδείας. During the N. E. monsoon, it is impossible to advance to the north: but the south-west blowing off the coast, though adverse, is not violent, and is relieved by the sea and land breezes.

Φακος, καὶ ἱμάτια βαρβαρικά σύμμικτα γεγραμμένα, καὶ σῖτος, καὶ οἶνος, καὶ κασσίτερος ὀλίγος. Φέρεται δὲ ἐξ αὐτῆς ποτὲ ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπὶ σχεδίας διαφερόντων εἰς τὴν ἀντικρυς ⁸ Ὀκῆλιν καὶ Μύζα, ἀρώματα καὶ ἐλέφας ὀλίγος, καὶ χελώνη, καὶ σμύρνα ἐλαχίστη, διαφέρουσα δὲ τῆς ἄλλης. Ἀτακτότεροι δὲ οἱ κατοικῶντες τὸν τόπον βάρβαροι. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν Αὐαλέτην, ἕτερον ἐμπόριον ἐστὶν τέτταρτον διαφέρον, ἡ λεγομένη Μαλαῶ, πλεονάζουσα ἀπέχουσα σαδίων ὡς ὀκτακοσίων. Ὁ δὲ ὄρμος ἐπίσαλος, σκεπόμενος ἀκρωτηρίῳ, τῷ ἐξ ἀνατολῆς ἀνατέννεται. Οἱ δὲ κατοικῶντες εἰρηνικώτεροι. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τῆτον τὸν τόπον τὰ προσηρημένα, καὶ πλείονες χιτῶνες, σάγιοι ⁹ Ἀρσινοητικοί, γεγραμμένοι καὶ βεβαμμένοι, καὶ ποτήρια, καὶ μελίεφθα ὀλίγα, καὶ σίδηρος, καὶ δηνάριον οὐ πολὺ, καὶ χρυσὸν δὲ καὶ ἀργυρῶν. Ἐκφέρεται δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων τέττων, καὶ σμύρνα, καὶ λίβανος ὁ περατικός ὀλίγος, καὶ κασσία σκληροτέρα, καὶ δόακα, καὶ κάγκαμον, καὶ μάκειρ, τὰ εἰς Ἀραβίαν προχωρῶντα, καὶ σώματα σπανίως. Ἀπὸ δὲ Μαλαῶ δύο δρόμοις ἐστὶν ἐμπόριον ἡ Μένδα. Ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἀσφαλέρων ὄρμῃ τὰ πλοῖα, εἰς τὴν προσηρημένην ἔγχετα τῆς γῆς ἦσαν. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν τὰ προσηρημένα, καὶ ἐκεῖθεν ὁμοίως ἐκφέρεται τὰ προσηρημένα φορτία. Θυμίαμα, τὸ λεγόμενον Μοκρότο.

polis, several sorts of cloth dressed and made up into garments, corn, wine, and a small quantity of tin.

The exports are carried by the natives in boats or rafts to Okêlis and Moofa, [on the opposite coast of Arabia,] and consist of spices, tortoise shell, a little ivory, and a very small quantity of myrrh, but of the finest sort. The natives here are disorderly and troublesome.

The next mart on this coast is Malaô; it lies at the distance of eight hundred stadia from the last mart; it is superior to Avalites, but the anchorage is still only an open road, covered by a promontory stretching out from the east. The natives are of a better sort.

The imports here are the same as those aforementioned, with a larger assortment of cloaks, and under garments from Ar-Suez, finoë, dressed and dyed; drinking vessels, brads for ornaments, iron, and a small quantity of specie, both gold and silver.

The exports are myrrh, frankincense in small quantities, hard cinnamon, doôaka, γ κάγκamus, and makeir, for the Arabian Market, and a few slaves.

At two days sail from Malaô lies Moon-Zeila? dus, where there is a safe road under cover of an island close to the shore.

The imports and exports are the same, with the addition of the incense called Mokrotoo. The natives are untractable.

⁷ καὶ Gel.

⁸ Κῆλιν Gel.

⁹ Ἀρσινοητικοί Gel.

¹ διὰ Stuckius.

^γ Kánkamus is a gum or resin; doôaka and makeir may be gums likewise, or inferior sorts of cinnamon.

Οἱ δὲ κατοικῶντες ἔμποροι σκληρότεροι. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Μούνδου, πλεόντων εἰς τὴν ἀνατολὴν ὁμοίως μετὰ δύο δρόμους ἢ τρεῖς, πλησίον κῆται τὸ Μόσυλλον, ἐν αἰγιαλῷ δυσόρμῳ. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν τὰ προσηρημένα γένη, καὶ σκεύη ἀργυρᾶ. Σιδηρᾶ δὲ ἐλάσσω, καὶ λιθία. Ἐξάγεται δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων κασίης χύμα πλείστον, ὃ καὶ μειζόνων πλοίων χρήζει τὸ ἐμπόριον, καὶ ἄλλα εὐόδια, καὶ ἀρώματα, καὶ χελωνάρια ὀλίγα, καὶ μοκρότε, ἥτιον τῷ Μενδιτικῷ, καὶ λίβανος ὁ περατικός. Ἐλέφας δὲ καὶ σμύρνα σπανίως. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῷ Μόσυλλῳ παραπλεύσαντι μετὰ δύο δρόμους, τὸ λεγόμενον Νειλοπτολεμαίαν, καὶ Ταπατηγὴν, καὶ Δαφνῶνα μικρὸν, ἀκρατήριον ἐλέφας, [ἀπὸ Ὀπάνης εἰς νότον προχωρεῖ. Εἴτα εἰς λίβαν] ἡ χώρα ποταμὸς ἔχει, τὸν λεγόμενον Ἐλέφαντα, καὶ Δαφνῶνα μέγαν, λεγόμενον Ἀκάνναν. Ἐν ἡ μονογενῶς λίβανος ὁ περατικός, πλείστος καὶ διάφορος γίνεται. Καὶ μετὰ ταύτην τῆς γῆς ὑποχωρέσης εἰς τὸν νότον ἤδη, τὸ τῶν Ἀρωμάτων ἐμπόριον, καὶ

From Moondus the course is * easterly; and at the distance of two or three days sail, you reach * Mofullon, on an open Barbora † shore.

The imports here are still the same, and, besides these, silver plate, a small assortment of iron and glass. The exports are a great quantity of cinnamon, and the natives use † larger vessels for conveying it [to Arabia]: they export likewise odoriferous gums, spices, tortoise shell, and mokrotoo, inferior to that of Moondus, † frankincense, ivory and myrrh in small quantities.

At the distance of two days sail from Mofullon, you arrive at Nilo-Ptolemæon, Tapatêgê, the lesser Daphnôn, and cape † Elephant. † This tract of country has Ras Feel. several rivers, one called the Elephant, near the cape of that name, with the greater Daphnôn or Akannai.

In these parts the best and greatest quantity of frankincense is procured; and from hence the coast takes a turn towards the south to the great promontory called † Arômata, which is the most easterly Cape Gardafui.

* Πλεόντων εἰς ἀνατολὴν. This mention of the course taking a direction to the east here, is the ground for supposing Moondus to be Zeila.

† The reason for supposing Mofullon to be Barbora is, the mention of a promontory there by Ptolemy; for there is a cape at Barbora, with a considerable projection to the north.

‡ This has a reference to the boats and rafts employed in the trade between Avalites and Arabia, and not to the bulk of cinnamon.

§ Λίβανος ὁ περατικός. Frankincense brought from the outer marts, and therefore called περατικός in the market of Alexandria.

¶ Feel is the Ethiopic term for an elephant.

• Ἀπὸ Ὀπάνης εἰς νότον προχωρεῖ. Εἴτα εἰς λίβαν. These words are an evident interpolation, or transposed from another part of the original copy: they have no meaning placed here, as they are in all the printed editions.

† Ἀρώματα in its primitive sense signifies odours, or aromatic gums; but seems in a variety of instances to be used by the author of the Periplus as comprehending spices in general. No odour is specified in this passage but frankincense: mogla, and motò, are possibly species of cinnamon.

ἀκρωτήριον τελευταῖον τῆς βαρβαρικῆς
ἡπείρου πρὸς ἀνατολὴν ² Ἀποκόπων. Ὁ
δὲ ὄρμος ἐπίσαλος, κατὰ καιρὸς ἐπι-
κίνδυνος, διὰ τὸ προσεχῆ τὸν τόπον εἶναι
τῷ βορέα. Σημεῖον δὲ τῷ μέλλοντος χει-
μῶνος τοπικόν, τὸ τὸν βυθὸν θολερώτερον
γίνεσθαι, καὶ τὴν χροάν ἀλλάσσειν. Τότε
δὲ γενομένοι, πάντες ἀποφεύγουσιν εἰς τὸ
μέγα ἀκρωτήριον τόπον καὶ σκέπη, τὸ
λεγόμενον Τάβαι. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τὸ
ἐμπόριον, ὁμοίως τὰ προσηρμένα. Γίνε-
ται δὲ τὰ ἐν αὐτῷ κασία καὶ γίζιρ, καὶ
ἀσύφη, καὶ ἄρωμα, καὶ μάγλα, καὶ μοτῶ,
καὶ λίβανος. Ἀπὸ δὲ Τάβαι, μετὰ τε-
τράκοσίαις παραπλεύσαντι χερσό-
νησον, καθ' ὃν τόπον καὶ ὁ ῥὸς ἔλκει,
ἕτερόν ἐστιν ἐμπόριον Ὀπάνη. Εἰς ἣν καὶ
αὐτὴν προχωρεῖ μὲν τὰ προσηρμένα, τὸ
δὲ πλεῖστον ἐν αὐτῇ γινᾶται κασία, καὶ
ἄρωμα, καὶ μοτῶ, καὶ δελικὰ κρέσσονα,
καὶ εἰς Αἴγυπτον προχωρεῖ μάλλον, καὶ
χελῶνη πλείστη, καὶ διαφορωτέρα τ' ἄλ-
λης. Πλείεται δὲ εἰς πάντα ταῦτα τὰ
πέραν ἐμπόρια, ἀπὸ μὲν Αἰγύπτου περὶ

point of the continent of Africa. It is
likewise the boundary of the whole tract
called Barbaria.

Adel.

The anchorage here is on an open
shore, and at particular times highly dan-
gerous from its exposition to the ϵ north.
The prognostics of a storm peculiar to
the place are, the ground swell of the sea,
and the change in the colour of the water.
At the sight of which the anchor is im-
mediately weighed, and the ships find no
security till they get under the shelter of
a second great promontory, called ^h Tabai. ^{Dafui.}
But at Arômata are procured (as its name
implies) spices more preeminently; for
cinnamon *grows* here, and its different
species, styled, Gizeir, fine, Afuphê, or-
dinary, Môgla and Motô, and besides
these frankincense.

The imports are the same as at the
other marts on this coast.

The mart next to Tabai is Opônê, at ^{Bandel-Caus?}
the distance of four hundred stadia; and
the course to Opônê is round the pro-
jection of the cape, with the current in
your favour.

The imports are the same here as those
already specified; the exports are, abun-
dant of cinnamon, which is the produce
of the ⁱ country, spices, gums, a superior
sort of slaves, who find a ready sale in
Egypt, and the finest tortoise shell in
great quantities.

The best season for the voyage to all
these marts beyond the straits is in Epi-
phi, or July; but besides the fleets which
come hither from Egypt, there is also a

² Ἀπίνων Gelenius.

⁸ That is, the setting of the N. E. monsoon.

^h Ptolemy has no Tabai, but, instead of it, Zen-
giza, which he describes as a high cape, with a
three-forked head. This is the characteristic fea-
ture of Dafui, according to Capt. Biffell: it is on
an island, and, properly speaking, has three distinct

capas or projections, which give it this appear-
ance.

ⁱ Τὸ δὲ πλεῖστον ἐν αὐτῇ γινᾶται κασία. This
is precise for the growth of cinnamon in Africa;
but the fact is, universally denied by the moderns.

τὸν Ἰέλιον μῆνα, ὃ ἐστὶν Ἐπιφί. Ἐξα-
 τίζεται δὲ συνήθως, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἔσω τό-
 πων τῆς Ἀριακῆς, καὶ Βαρυγάζων, εἰς
 τὰ αὐτὰ τὰ πέραν ἐμπόρια, γένη προ-
 χωρεῖντα ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων, σῖτος, καὶ ὄρυζα,
 καὶ βύττυρον, καὶ ἔλαιον σησάμινον, καὶ ὀθό-
 νιον ἢ τε μοναχὴ, καὶ ἡ σαγματογῆνη, καὶ
 περιζώματα, καὶ μέλι τὸ καλάμινον, τὸ
 λεγόμενον σάκχαρι. Καὶ οἱ μὲν προη-
 γαμένως εἰς ταῦτα τὰ ἐμπόρια πλέουσι,
 αἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸν παράπλευν ἀνιφορτίζονται
 τὰ ἐμπεσόντα. Οὐ βασιλεύεται δὲ ὁ τό-
 πος, ἀλλὰ τυράννοις ἰδίους καθ' ἑκάστον
 ἐμπόριον διοικεῖται. Ἀπὸ δὲ Ὀπάνης, ἢ
 ἀκτῆς εἰς τὸ νότον ὑποχωρέσης ἐπὶ πλεῖον,
 πρῶτα μὲν εἰς τὰ λεγόμενα μικρὰ Ἀπό-
 κοπα καὶ μεγάλη τῆς Ἀζανίας, διὰ
 ἀγκυροβολίων. Ποταμὸς, ἐπὶ δρόμους ἔξ,
 παρ' αὐτὸν ἤδη τὸν λίβα. Εἴτα αἰγια-
 λὸς καὶ μικρὸς καὶ μέγας, ἐπ' ἄλλας δρό-
 μους ἔξ. Καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸ ἐξῆς,

distinct communication, and a separate
 voyage performed by the native mer-
 chants from India.

^k The vessels they arrive in are fitted
 out from ¹ Ariakè, or Barugáza, and come ^{Concan and Baroache.}
 to the coast of Africa with their native
 produce, wheat, rice, butter or ghee, oil
 of sesamum, cotton in the web or for
 stuffing couches, safhes, and honey from
 the cane called fugar. Some of these
 have their express destination for this
 coast, and others only touch here to ex-
 change part of their cargo for such arti-
 cles as they can obtain, [and then pro-
 ceed farther to Arabia or the Red sea.]

This part of the coast of Africa is not
 under the ^m dominion of any one general
 potentate, but each separate port has its
 respective chief.

The whole tract from Arómata to Ajan.
 Rhapta is styled Azania; but as the
 coast from Opónè trends more to the
 south, the first division consists of a course
 of six days, terminating at a river; and
 in this interval lie two capes, called Apó-
 kopa the less, and Apókopa the great.
 [The first is Morro Cobir, and the second
 cape Baxos, or shoal cape.] There is no
 anchorage during the whole passage but
 on the open shore, and at the termination
 of this division there is a river, and the
 coast inclines to the west of south.

The second division consists of six courses
 more, and the tract is called the Little
 and Great Coast. And after these a third

¹ ὁ ὀρίων Gelenius.

^k This is the most curious passage in the whole
 work: it proves, in the first instance, a direct trade
 between India and Arabia, in all appearance ear-
 lier than the trade of the Greeks from Egypt; and
 in the second, that the ships which touched here
 had a farther destination, which could only be to
 Arabia or the Red sea. The articles re-exported
 from Adooli to Arabia, noticed above, seem to in-

timate that these ships from India reached that
 port.

¹ Ariakè is Concan, the Mahratta coast; Baru-
 gáza is Baroache in Guzerat.

^m So it was when the Portugueze first reached
 this coast, and so it continues, in a great measure,
 to the present day.

οἱ τῆς Ἀζανίας δρόμοι. Πρῶτον μὲν, ὁ λεγόμενος Σαραπίωνος· εἰδ' ὁ Νίκωνος. Μεθ' ὃν, ποταμοὶ πλείονες, καὶ ἄλλοι συνεχεῖς ὅρμοι, διηρημένοι κατὰ σαθμὸς καὶ δρόμους ἡμερησίως πλείους, τὰς πάντας ἑπτὰ, μέχρι Πυραλαίων νήσων, [καὶ τῆς] καινῆς λεγομένης διώρυχος. Ἀφ' ἧς μικρὸν ἐπάνω τῷ λιθός, μετὰ δύο δρόμους νυχθημέρας, παρ' αὐτὴν τὴν δύσιν Εἰτηνηδιομένης θέσεως ἀπαντᾷ νῆσος, σαδίων ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ὥσπερ τριακοσίων, ταπεινὴ καὶ καταάδενδρος. Ἐν ἧ καὶ ποταμοὶ, καὶ ὀρεῶν γένη πλείεστα, καὶ χελώνη ὀρεινή. Θηρίων δὲ ἔδεν ὅλως ἔχει, πλὴν κροκοδείλων, ἔδενά δὲ ἀνθρώπων ἀδικεῖσι. Ἔστιν δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ πλοιάρια ῥαπτὰ καὶ μονόζυλα, οἷς χρωῖνται πρὸς ἀλίαν καὶ ἄγραν χε-

division, still bearing the name of Azania, in which the first anchorage is at Serapion, the second at Nikon; and then a succession of seven rivers, at each of which is an anchorage for seven successive days. This division terminates at the Puraláan islands, and a place called the New Canal. Mombaza?

From the New Canal the vessel [leaves the coast, and] stretches over to an island called Menoothéfiás; her course is south-westⁿ for two days and nights, and the island lies directly^o west from ****, at the distance of three hundred stadia from the continent; it is *low* and *woody*, and has several rivers. Birds also are found here of various sorts, and the land tortoise; but no noxious animal except the P crocodile, which here never attacks man. The embarkations of the natives are vessels fewen with coir, and canoes, which they employ in catching fish, and the sea

ⁿ I have in an express dissertation acknowledged my inability to reconcile this passage to geography: but our ground is certain as far as the termination of the coast of seven rivers, and the Puraláan islands; these are, the mouths of the great river Obii or Quilimané, with some smaller streams, and the islands Ampaza, Lamo, and Patté. Of the New Canal I am not certain; it may be Mombaza, or it may be in the bay Formosa, just to the south of these islands. I have contended strongly for Mombaza in my former work; but Captain Bissell's Journal has almost converted my conjecture to Formosa. From Formosa a course of two days and nights, equal to two hundred miles, answers sufficiently to the distance of that bay from Pemba, which is actually 170 miles, or 182 miles Roman. But then the distance from Pemba to Rhapta is far too short. Menoothéfiás must be one of the Zanguebar islands; for no other on this part of the coast lie at three hundred stadia, or thirty miles, from the continent. After much fluctuation in my opinion which to prefer, I am determined for Pemba by Captain Bissell's description of it, as

low and *woody*, which is the identical character it bears in the Periplus, ταπεινὴ καὶ καταάδενδρος. The course likewise from Formosa to Pemba would be south-west, which reconciles one expression in the original, ἐπάνω τῷ λιθός. The other point (which marks the island as lying παρ' αὐτὴν τὴν δύσιν) is still irreconcilable. I am weary of conjecture on this most corrupt passage; but still persuaded, that as Menoothéfiás is one of the Zanguebar islands, so is Rhapta Quiloa; because on the whole coast, from Mombaza to Quiloa, we have not a name to fix on, and Ptolemy's characters of Rhapta answer to Quiloa precisely; for he gives it a bay, a river, a mart, and a promontory to the south, which answers to cape Delgado.

^o παρ' αὐτὴν τὴν δύσιν Εἰτηνηδιαν. I have abandoned this last word, and can add nothing to what I have said on it, but that some genitive, governed by δύσιν, lies concealed under it.

^p The crocodile here meant is probably the very large lizard found in Madagascar, the Comoro islands, and, I believe, on the continent.

λώνης. Ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ τῇ νήσῳ καὶ γυργάδοις αὐτὰς ἰδίως λινεύουσιν, ἀντὶ δικτύων καθιέντες αὐτὰς περὶ τὰ σώματα τῶν προράχων. Ἀφ' ἧς μετὰ δύο δρόμους τῆς ἡπείρου τὸ τελευταῖόν τινος τῆς Ἀζανίας ἐμπόριον κεῖται, τὰ Ῥαπτὰ λεγόμενα, ταύτην ἔχον τὴν προσωυμίαν, ἀπὸ τῶν προσημειωμένων ραπτῶν πλοιαρίων, ἐν ᾗ καὶ πλεῖστος ἐστὶν ἐλέφας, καὶ χελώνη. Μέγιστοι δὲ σώμασιν περὶ ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἄνθρωποι ὄρατοὶ κατοικῶσιν. Καὶ κατὰ τὸν τόπον ἕκαστον ὁμοίως τιθέμενοι τυράννεις. Νέμεται δὲ αὐτὴν κατὰ τι δίκαιον ἀρχαῖον, ὑποπίπτουσιν τῇ βασιλείᾳ τῆς πρώτης γινομένης Ἀραβίας, ὁ Μαφαρέτης τύραννος. Παρὰ δὲ τῇ βασιλείᾳ, ὑπόφορον αὐτὴν ἔχουσιν οἱ ἀπὸ Μύζα. Καὶ πέμπουσιν εἰς αὐτὴν ἐφόλκια, τὰ πλεονα κνδερνήταις καὶ χρειακοῖς Ἀραβῶν χρώμενοι τοῖς κατὰ συνθήκην καὶ ἐπιγαμβρίαν ἔχουσιν, ἐμπέροις τε ὅσιν τῶν τόπων καὶ τῆς φωνῆς αὐτῶν. Εἰσφέρεται δὲ εἰς τὰ ἐμπόρια ταῦτα προσημειωμένως, ἢ τοπικῶς ἐν Μύζᾳ κατασκευαζομένη λόγχη, καὶ πελὺκία, καὶ μαχάρις, καὶ ὀπήτια, καὶ λιθίας ὑαλῆς πλέκτια γένη. Εἰς δὲ τινὰς τόπους οἶνος τε καὶ σῖτος ἐκ ὀλίγου, οὐ πρὸς ἐργασίαν, ἀλλὰ δαπάνης χάριν, εἰς Φιλανθρωπίαν τῶν βαρβάρων. Ἐκφέρεται δὲ

tortoise; but for the latter they have also a peculiar manner of fishing, by letting down wicker baskets, instead of nets, at the openings of the shoals.

From Menoothéfiās a course of two days brings you to Rhapta, which is the last mart on the continent: and Rhapta has its name from *ράπτω*, to sew, because the vessels in use there are formed of planks sewed together, [without the use of nails.]

The articles obtained here are ivory and tortoise shell; and the natives are men of the largest stature that are any where to be seen. This part of the coast likewise has a distinct chief in every separate place.

But, besides the native chiefs, the Arabians have a command over the whole, a power which by prescriptive right belongs to [r Kholāibus] the chief of Maphartis in Sabēa: but the merchants of Moosa now hold it of [Kharibaēl] the paramount sovereign of the Sabēans, [who is an Homerite,] and by his authority collect the customs or tribute of the port. Hither likewise they send their vessels, on board which they employ for commanders and factors Arabs, who know the coast, and understand the language; or who have connections with the natives, and sometimes intermarry with them.

The imports at Rhapta are lances, made at Mooza specifically for this market, axes, daggers, and awls, with several sorts of flint glass; and at some places wine, and a large quantity of wheat, not for sale, but to answer the expences of the traders, and to conciliate the natives.

⁴ τὰ Ῥαπτὰ τὰ λεγόμενα Gelenius.

¹ This distance is much too short from Pemba to Quiloa.

² The distinction is made here by using two dif-

ferent terms; the *chief* is styled *τύραννος*, the *paramount βασιλεύς*: the same distinction as occurs at p. 13. of the original.

ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων ἐλέφας πλεῖστος, ἥσσαν δὲ τῇ Ἀδελτικῇ, καὶ ρινόκερος, καὶ χελώνη διάφορος μετὰ τὴν Ἰνδικήν, καὶ ναύπλιος ὀλίγος. Καὶ σχεδὸν τελευταίωτά ἐστι ταῦτα τὰ ἐμπορία τῆς Ἀζανίας, τῆς ἐν δεξιῇ ἀπὸ Βερενίκης ἡπείρου. Ὁ γὰρ μετὰ τέρας τὰς τόπους ὠκεανὸς, ἀνερεύνητος ὢν, εἰς τὴν δύσιν ἀνακάμπει, καὶ τοῖς ἀπετραμμένοις μέρεσιν τῆς Αἰθιοπίας, καὶ Λιβύης, καὶ Ἀφρικῆς, κατὰ τὸν νότον παρεκτείνων, εἰς τὴν ἐσπέριον συμμίσγει θάλασσαν.

The exports consist of a large assortment of ivory, but it is inferior in quality to that of Adooli, with the addition of rhinoceros's horn and tortoise shell, nearly as good as that of India, and some inferior shells.

The places for trade about Rhapta are in a manner the last marts of Azania, and the termination of the whole coast from Berenikè down this eastern side of Africa; for the ocean farther south is still unexplored: but it winds round to the west, towards that part of the continent which lies at the ^u back of Ethiopia, Libya, and ^x Africa, and ^y communicates with the great western [or Atlantic] ocean.

After going through this work now for the third time, I have not found it necessary to recall any of the assumptions I had hazarded, neither have I a doubt of any single position, except that of Mombaza. I have not displaced it in the

present translation, because there are not sufficient data for an alteration: but the uncertainty on this point cannot be removed, unless recourse could be had to an original manuscript, of which there is little expectation.

^{*} Ναύπλιος. An article unknown, but generally supposed to mean some sort of shell.

[†] It is evident from the passage just cited, p. 13. in the original, that not only Rhapta, but the other ports on the eastern coast of Africa or Ajan, were subject to the Arabs.

^u Ἀπτετραμμένοις μέρεσιν. He means the western coast of Africa.

^x Africa, as here distinguished from Libya, is the coast of Numidia and Mauritania.

^y This communication is assumed by Skylax from the western side of the continent, as it is here by the author of the Periplus from the eastern side. The same opinion is adopted by Aristotle, Strabo, Polybius, and Juba, as well as many others: but the assertion of the actual circumnavigation is in one sense confined to Heródotus alone.

P E R I P L U S
O F
T H E E R Y T H R E A N S E A .

*The Second Part of the Periplus, containing the Navigation of the
Ancients round the Coasts of Arabia, and across the Indian Ocean,
to the Western Coast of India.*

IN the edition of the Periplus by Hudson, the intellect is of greater use than the eye to discriminate between the termination of the African, and the commencement of the Oriental voyage; for it is by the intervention of a single point, that we are carried back again from Rhapta to Berenikè and Muos Hormus, in order to proceed on the navigation towards the east.

This is not a matter of importance indeed, but it is noticed to shew the necessity of distinguishing the two Voyages with precision; and marking the departure from the same two ports again, in

an opposite direction, and with a very different destination.

The Voyage itself is the most interesting narrative which the ancients have left us on this subject, except the expedition of Nearchus; and contains many particulars in detail, which could hardly have been collected by any author, unless he were a navigator who had actually performed the voyage himself. In this respect it is one of the most valuable remains of antiquity; and the internal evidence it contains is a complete proof of its veracity and authenticity.

A R A B I A .

ΕΚ δὲ τῶν εὐωνύμων Βερενίκης ἀπὸ
Μυὸς ὄρμου, δυσὶν δρόμοις ἢ τρισὶν εἰς τὴν
ἀνατολὴν, διαπλεύσαντι τὸν παρακείμενον
κόλπον, ὄρμος ἐστὶν ἕτερος, καὶ Φρέ-

A R A B I A .

MUOS Hormus lies on the ^a left of Berenikè, and from this port to Leukè ^{Motlah}. Kômè [on the opposite coast of Arabia] the passage is two or three days sail across the gulph.

^a By these expressions, on the *left* and the *right*, we are to understand the author as taking his departure from the port. Thus Ptolemæis Thérôn

was on the right of Berenikè, and the islands Alalaioo on the right of Adooli.

ριον, ὃ λέγεται Λευκὴ Κώμη, δι' ἧς ἐστὶν εἰς Πέτραν πρὸς Μαλίχαν βασιλέα Ναβαταίων. Ἔχει δὲ ἐμπορίαν τινὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τάξιν, τοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀραβίας ἐξαρτιζομένοις εἰς αὐτὴν πλοίοις οὐ μεγάλοις. Διὸ καὶ παραφυλακῆς χάριν, εἰς αὐτὴν παραλήπτῃς τῆς τετάρτης τῶν εἰσφερομένων φορτίων, καὶ ἑκατοντάρχης μετὰ στρατεύματος ἀποστέλλεται. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτην εὐθέως ἐστὶν συναφῆς Ἀραβικὴ χώρα, κατὰ μῆκος ἐπὶ πολὺ παρατείνουσα τῇ ἐρυθρᾷ θαλάσῃ. Διάφορα ἔν ἐν αὐτῇ ἔθνη κατοικεῖται· τινὰ μὲν ἐπὶ πρὸς, τινὰ δὲ καὶ τελείως τῇ γλώσσῃ διαλλάσσοντα. Τούτων τὰ παρὰ θάλασσαν, ὁμοίως Ἰχθυοφάγων, μάνδραις διέκλιπται· τὰ δὲ ἐπάνω, κατὰ κώμας καὶ νομαδίας οἰκεῖται πονηροῖς ἀνθρώποις διφώνοις. Οἷς παραπίπτοντες ἀπὸ τῶν μέσων πλοῦν, οἱ μὲν διαρπάσσονται, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ ναυαγίων σωθέντες ἀνδραποδίζονται. Διὸ καὶ συνεχῶς ἀπὸ τῶν τυράννων καὶ βασιλέων τῆς Ἀραβίας αἰχμαλωτίζονται. Λέγονται δὲ Κανραῖται. Καθόλου μὲν ἔν οὗτος ὁ τῆς Ἀραβικῆς χώρας ἡπείρου παράπλευρος ἐστὶν ἐπισφαλῆς, καὶ ἀλίμενος ἡ χώρα καὶ δύσορμος, καὶ ἀκάθαρτος, ραχίαις καὶ σπίλοις ἀπρόσιτος, καὶ κατὰ πάντα φοβερά. Διὸ καὶ εἰσπλέοντων μέσον πλοῦν κατέχομεν, καὶ εἰς τὴν Ἀραβικὴν χώραν μᾶλ-

Leukè Kômè is the place where the merchants land to go up to Petra, the residence of Malikhas, king of the Nabatæans; and it is occupied by a [Roman] garrison. It is a mart likewise for the small Arabian vessels that trade on this coast; for which reason there is a centurion placed here with his company, both for the protection of the place, and in order to secure the collection of the customs, which amount to a fourth part of the value of the cargo.

From ^bLeukè Kômè the adjoining coast of Arabia stretches a great way [south] down the Red sea, inhabited by various tribes or nations, all differing in some measure, and several having a distinct language. Those next the sea live like the Ikthuthophagi [on the opposite coast] in huts or tents; but the tribes more inland are Kanraites or Bedouin Arabs, who speak two different languages. If a vessel happens to be shipwrecked here, she is plundered, and those on board are reduced to slavery: but the ^cKanraites, in return, are seized and made slaves of, by all the native kings and chiefs [who have commerce on these seas.]

The whole navigation along this part of Arabia is dangerous in the highest degree, for there is no harbour, scarcely an anchorage that is safe, foul ground every where, the shore unapproachable from shoals and breakers, and in short every thing that is destructive to the mariner.

It is for this reason that on *our* passage down the gulph, we hold our course large in the mid-channel, towards [the

^b Leukè Kômè signifies the *white village*; its site is Moilah, determined by three islands, which Agatharchides places at the entrance of the Elanitic gulph.

^c The Kanraites are the wild Arabs of the desert north of Yambo, still thieves and plunderers of the very worst description. *Irwin*.

λοι παροξύνομεν, ἄχρι τῆς κατακεκαυμένης νήσου, μεθ' ἣν εὐθέως ἡμέρων ἀνθρώπων, καὶ νομαδιῶν θρεμμάτων, καὶ καμήλων συνεχεῖς ὁ χώρος. Καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα, ἐν κόλπῳ τῷ τελευταιστάτῳ τῶν εὐωνύμων τέττα τῷ πελάγῳ, ἐμπόριον ἐστὶν νόμιμον παραθαλάσσιον Μύζα, σάδιες ἀπέχον τὰς πάντας, ἀπὸ Βερενίκης παρ' αὐτὸν τὸν νότον πλεόντων, ὡς εἰς μυρίας διαχιλίας. Τὸ μὲν ὅλον Ἀράβων, ναυκληρικῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ ναυτικῶν πλεονάζον, καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ ἐμπορίας πρᾶγματα κινῶται. Συγχρῶνται γὰρ τῇ τῷ πέραν ἐργασία καὶ βαρυγάζων, ἰδίῳις ἐξαρτισμοῖς. Ὑπέρκειται δὲ αὐτῆς ἀπὸ τριῶν ἡμερῶν πόλις Σαύη, τῆς περὶ αὐτὴν Ἑξαφρίτιδος λεγομένης χώρας. Ἔστιν δὲ τύραννος, καὶ κατοικῶν αὐτὴν, Χόλαιβος. Καὶ μετ' ἄλλας ἐννέα ἡμέρας. Ἐν ἣ Ἀφάρ μητρόπολις. Ἐν ἣ Χαριβαῆλ, ἑθνομὸς βασιλεὺς ἐθνῶν δύο, τῷ τε Ὀμηρίτῃ καὶ τῷ παρακειμένου λεγομένου Σαβαῆτι, συνεχέσι πρεσβείαις καὶ δώροις φίλος τῶν αὐτοκρατόρων. Τὸ δὲ ἐμπόριον ἡ Μύζα ἀλίμενον μὲν, εὐσαλον δὲ καὶ εὖορμον, διὰ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν ἀμμόγεα ἀγ-

civilized part of] Arabia, never stopping till we come to the burnt ^d island.

Below this island, the inhabitants of the coast are civilized; they have herds, flocks, and pasture for camels. And on the south, towards the extremity of the Red sea, there is a bay, in which lies Moofa, an established port, close upon the shore.

The extent of the whole navigation from Berenikè [including the passage to Leukè Kômè] is twelve thousand stadia by a course nearly south.

The whole [of this part] of Arabia abounds with mariners and pilots, and with merchants who trade to all the ports beyond the straits quite to Barugáza. ^{Baroache in Guzerat.} Their exports consist of native commodities, [or such as are brought to them from Egypt.]

The province is called Maphartis; and the capital, three days inland from the port, is Savè, under the government of a chief named Kholaiibus; and nine days still farther inland is Aphar, the metropolis of the whole kingdom, under the dominion of ὁ Kharibaël, the paramount sovereign of both nations, the Homérites and Sabéans: this is the prince whose friendship is courted by our emperors, and to whom they send embassies and presents.

There is no harbour at Moofa, but an open bay; yet the anchorage is safe and good upon a ^f sandy bottom, where the anchors have good holding.

⁵ χώρα is not in Gelenius's edition.

⁶ Μαφάρτιδος Gelenius.

⁷ Σαφάρ Hudāfon.

^d Either gibel tar or gibel zekir; both shew the remains of volcanos. This is a run of about eight hundred miles, and proves that the vessels employed in this trade must have carried water and provisions, with accommodations for the seamen, which Nearchus had not.

^e Kholaiibus is styled τύραννος, Kharibaël ἑθνομὸς βασιλεὺς, the legitimate king.

^f Bruce says the same of Mocha; but Mocha is not Moofa. There is a town still called Moofa, now, twenty miles inland, between which and the sea the sand is supposed to have accumulated by Niebuhr and others.

κυροβόλια. Φορτία δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν προχωρεῖ, πορφύρα διάφορος καὶ χυδαία, καὶ ἱματισμοὶ Ἀραβικοὶ χειριδωτοί, ὅ, τε ἀπλοὺς καὶ ὁ κοινὸς, καὶ σκοτελάτος, καὶ διάχρυσος, καὶ κρόκος, καὶ κύπερος, καὶ ὀθόνιον, καὶ ἀβόλλαι, καὶ λώδικες οὐ πολλὰ, ἀπλοὶ τε καὶ ἐντόπιοι, ζῶναι σκιωταὶ, καὶ μύρον μέτριον, καὶ χρῆμα ἱκανόν, οἶνος τε καὶ σῖτος οὐ πολὺς. Φέρεται γὰρ καὶ ἡ χώρα πυρὸν μετρίως, καὶ οἶνον πλείονα. Τῷ τε βασιλεῖ καὶ τῷ τυράννῳ δίδονται ἵπποι τε καὶ ἡμίονοι ναπηγοὶ, καὶ χρυσώματα, καὶ τορευτὰ ἀργυρώματα, καὶ ἱματισμοὶ πολυτελεῖς, καὶ χαλκουργήματα. Ἐξάγεται δὲ ἐξ αὐτῆς, ἐντόπια μὲν, σμύρνα ἐκλεκτὴ, καὶ σάκτῃ ὁ σμυρναία, λύγδος, καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς πέραν Ἀδελῆ προσηρημένα Φορτία πάντα. Πλέεται δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν εὐκαιρῶς περὶ τὸν Σεπτέμβριον μῆνα, ὅς ἐστι Θάθ. Οὐδὲν δὲ κωλύει καὶ τὰ χιον. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτην ὥστε τριακοσίαις παραπλεύσαντες σταδίαις, ἥδη συνερχομένης τε τῆς Ἀραβικῆς ἡπείρου, καὶ τῆς πέραν κατὰ τὸν Αὐαλίτην Βαρβαρικῆς χώρας, αὐλῶν ἐστὶν οὐ μακρὸς, ὁ συνάγων καὶ εἰς ξενὸν ἀποκλείων τὸ πέλαγος· οὗ τὸν μεταξὺ πόρον ἐξήκοντα σταδίων μεσολαβῆ νῆσος ἡ Διο-

The imports here are, purple cloths, both fine and ordinary, coating ready made for the Arabian market, with sleeves reaching to the wrist: the cloth of which they are made is of various sorts, plain, or ordinary, or s mottled, or shot with gold. ^h Saffron, kuperus, or aromatic rush, cottons, coverlids, some plain and some peculiar to the market, but in no great quantity, fashies of different shades, unguents, specie sufficient for purchases, wine, and a small proportion of wheat; for the country itself in some measure supplies sufficient for its consumption.

Besides these, there are imported as presents for the king and for Kholaihus, horses and mules for the saddle, gold plate and silver burnished, or chased, brass wares, and cloth of high price for robes.

The exports are, native myrrh of the finest sort, gum from ⁱ Minêa, and alabaster, with all the articles that are imported from ^k Adooli on the opposite coast.

The best season for making the voyage is in Thoth, that is September, or earlier.

At three hundred stadia from Moofa, the two coasts of Arabia and Africa approach each other to form the straits [of Bab-el-mandeb] close to the bay of Avalites: the channel between is short but narrow, not exceeding sixty stadia, and is divided by the island of Diodôrus ^l. The Perim.

^h ἄβερμιναιά Gelenius. Perhaps σάκτῃ ἄβερμιναιά.

^h Σκοτελάτος is the Latin term *scutulatus*, applied to the colour of a horse, *dappled* or *mottled*; opposed here to ἀπλοὺς, cloth of one colour, and κοινός, ordinary: *vulgaris, e medio sumptus*.

^h It is not quite plain whether saffron is not one of the distinctions of the cloth, as *yellow*.

ⁱ Ἀδελῆ μινναία, gum of Minêa. Ἀδελῆ is pos-

sibly the name of the gum.

^k The exports from Adooli were both the produce of Egypt and the oriental commodities brought to that port in the Greek or Indian fleets.

^l The whole strait from coast to coast is twenty-four miles; six miles can only apply to the passage between Perim and Arabia.

δῶρα. Διὸ καὶ ῥωδῆς, καταπνεόμενος ἀπὸ τῶν παρακειμένων ὄρων, ἐστὶν ὁ κατ' αὐτὴν διάπλες. Κατὰ τῆτον τὸν ἰσθμὸν παραθαλάσσιός ἐστιν Ἀράβων κώμη τῆς αὐτῆς τυραννίδος Ὀκηλῖς, ἔχ' ἔτιως ἐμπορίον ὡς ὄρμος καὶ ὕδρευμα, καὶ πρῶτη καταγωγὴ τοῖς ἔσω διαίμασιν. Μετὰ ᾧ Ὀκηλιν ἀνογομένης πάλιν τῆς θαλάσσης εἰς ἀνατολὴν, καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν εἰς πείλαγος ἀποφανομένης, ἀπὸ σταδίων ὡς χιλίων διακοσίων, ἐστὶν εὐδαίμων Ἀραβία, κώμη παραθαλάσσιος βασιλείας τῆς αὐτῆς Ὁχαριβαήλ, τὰς ὄρμους μὲν ἐπιτηδέους καὶ ὕδρεύματα γλυκύτερα, καὶ κρείσσω τῆς Ὀκηλῆως ἔχουσα. Ἡδὴ δὲ ἐν ἀρχῇ κόλπον καμένη τῷ τὴν χώραν ὑποφύγειν. Εὐδαίμων ᾧ ἐπεκλήθη πρότερον ἔσα πόλις, ὅτε μήπω ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς εἰς τὴν Αἰγυπτιὸν ἐρχομένων, μηδὲ ἀπὸ Αἰγύπτου τολμάντων εἰς τὰς ἔσω τόπας διαίρειν, ἀλλ' ἄχρι ταύτης παραγινομένων, τὰς παρὰ ἀμφοτέρων φόρτας ἀπεδέχετο. Ὡς περ Ἀλεξάνδρεια καὶ τῶν ἑξῶθεν, καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Αἰγύπτου φερόμενων ἀποδέχεται. Νῦν δὲ οὐ πρὸ πολλῶν τῶν ἡμετέρων χρόνων Καῖσαρ αὐτὴν κατ-

current here is violent, and the wind, by being confined between the mountains on the two opposite shores, adds greatly to the strength of the current.

Close within the straits, on the Arabian side, lies Okêlis: it is a village close to Ghella the sea, [in a bay] and subject to ^m Kholaiabus, the chief of the province. There is no mart here, but it is merely a place of security to anchor at, and procure water for the vessels upon their entering the gulph.

For vessels which are outward bound, as soon as they have passed the straits, the course is easterly, as the sea opens in that direction, and widens by degrees [to Fartaque and Gardefan.] The first port is Arabia Felix, a village on the coast, twelve hundred stadia from the straits, and subject to ⁿ Kharibaël: it is a safe harbour, and convenient for obtaining water, which is sweeter and better than that of Okêlis. The village lies at the entrance of the harbour, as far as may be from the continent.

It is called Felix, or *happy*, because it was formerly a flourishing city, when the fleets which came from India for the supply of Egypt resorted to this port, and when the fleets from Egypt *did not dare to hazard* the voyage to India: the respective cargoes were then interchanged at this place; in the same manner as the produce of Egypt, and the articles imported from foreign countries, are exchanged at Alexandria. But within these few years the city has been taken and destroyed by the ^o Roman Emperor.

^p Ὁχαριβαήλτος Gelenius.

¹ Kai is not in Gelenius.

^m Τῆς αὐτῆς τυραννίδος implies, that it is the province of the *τύραννος*, and not of Kharibaël, who is *ἰνδισμὸς βασιλεὺς*, the king.

ⁿ Τῆς αὐτῆς βασιλείας Ὁχαριβαήλ. Here *βασιλείας* is put in contradistinction to *τυραννίδος*.

^o Καῖσαρ or Cefar was a name common to all

εστρέφατο. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβικῆς ἐκτείνεται συναφῆς αἰθιαλὸς ἐπιμήκης, καὶ κόλπος, ἐπὶ διαλίξας ἢ πλεονας παρήκων σταδίων, Νομάδων τὲ καὶ Ἰχθυοφάγων κώμαις παροικουμέναις. Οὐ μετὰ τὴν προέχουσαν ἄκραν ἐμπορίον ἐστὶν ἕτερον παραθαλάσσιον Κανὴ, βασιλείας Ἐλεάζου χώρας λιβαντοφόρου, καὶ κατ' αὐτὴν ἔρημοι νῆσοι δύο, μία μὲν ἡ τῶν ὀρνέων, ἡ δὲ ἑτέρα λεγομένη Τρέλλας, ἀπὸ σταδίων ἑκατὸν εἰκοσὶ τῆς Κανῆς. Ὑπέρκειται δὲ αὐτῆς μεσόγειος ἡ μητρόπολις Σάββαθα, ἐν ᾗ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς κατοικῇ. Πᾶς δὲ ὁ γεννώμενος ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ λίβανος εἰς αὐτὴν ὥσπερ ἐκδοχῆον εἰσάγεται καμήλοις τε καὶ οὐρεῖαις ἰνδοπῆλαις δερματίναϊς ἐξ ἄσκων καὶ πλοῖοις. ἔχει δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ σύγχρησιν τῶν πέραν ἐμπορίων, Βαρυγάζων, καὶ Σκυθίας, καὶ Ὀμάνων, καὶ τῆς παρακειμένης Περσίδος. Εἰσάγεται δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν, ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου μὲν ὁμοίως πυρὸς ὀλίγος καὶ αἶνος, ὥσπερ καὶ εἰς Μάζα. Ἰματισμοὶ Ἀραβικοὶ ὁμοίως, καὶ κοινὸς καὶ ἀπλῆς, καὶ ὁ νόθος, περισσότερος. Καὶ χαλκὸς, καὶ

From Arabia Felix [which is the same as the modern Aden] the adjoining coast stretches out with a vast sweep for more than two thousand stadia to P Kanè; the whole tract is occupied by Ikhtuóphagi and wandering tribes, and Kanè lies under a cape at the termination of it, subject to a chief called Eleázus, who is possessor of the incense country.

There are two small uninhabited islands, styled O'rneon and Troolas, at the distance of an hundred and twenty stadia from Kanè.

The metropolis in the interior is ⁹ Sab- Schibam⁹ batha: here is the residence of the king, and hither is brought all the frankincense, of the country to be stored. Camels, boats, and rafts floated on inflated skins, are employed in the conveyance.

There is likewise a considerable foreign trade at Kanè to Barugáza and Scindi in India, to ¹ Omana, and to the ports of the gulph of Persia in the neighbourhood of Oman.

The imports here from Egypt are, a small quantity of wheat and wine, the same as at Moofa; cloth for the natives, both ³ plain and common, with a large assortment of it fraudulently manufactured. Besides these they import brasse,

the Roman emperors; and this city was destroyed, probably, by Claudius, because the fleets from Egypt now went to India, and it was the interest of Rome to suppress a rival.

^P I could have wished to place Kanè at Keschin, which I have found written Kasne or Kasfin in oriental geographers, and which is a place of great trade: but the distance does not answer; and D'Anville, after Sanfon, finds a place called Cave-Kanim on this coast.

⁹ Sabbathath and Eleazus suggest Scripture names to the mind: but Niebuhr informs us, that several towns in Arabia take their name from the day on

which their market is held: and if this could be applied in the present instance, the market-day might be on the Sabbath, or Saturday.

¹ Omana may mean the Omana of the Periplus, which is Shær, or Omana on the coast of Karmania. The real Oman is the south-east angle of Arabia.

³ Ἀπλῆς, κοινὸς, νόθος. Ἀπλῆς, applied to colour, is all of one shade, not striped or mottled. Νόθος, or spurious, may be bad cloth, imposed upon the natives instead of a genuine manufacture, as the French carry their cloths to Turkey, and pass them off for Londres.

πασσέτερος, καὶ κοράλιον, καὶ σύραξ, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ὅσα εἰς Μύζα. Τὰ πλείονα δὲ ἀργυρώματα τετορευμένα καὶ χρήματα τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἵπποι δὲ, καὶ ἀνδριάντες, καὶ ἱματισμὸς διάφορος, ἀπλᾶς. Ἐξάγεται δὲ ἐξ αὐτῆς, ἐνὶ πλείονα μὲν Φόβια, λίβανος καὶ ἀλόη, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ κατὰ μετοχὴν τῶν ἄλλων ἐμπορίων, πλεῖται δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν περὶ τὸν αὐτὸν καιρὸν, ὃν καὶ εἰς Μύζα, πρωιμώτερον δέ. Μετὰ δὲ Κανὴ τῆς γῆς ἐπὶ πλείον ὑποχωρήσεως ἄλλος ἐκδέχεται βαθυτάτος κόλπος, ἐπὶ πολὺ παρεκταίνων, ὃ λεγόμενος Σαχαλίτης· καὶ χώρα λιβανοτοφόρος, ὁρεσὶν² τε καὶ δύσβατος, ἀέρα παχὺν ἔχουσα καὶ ὀμιχλώδη, κατὰ τῶν δένδρων φερόμενον τὸν λίβανον. Ἔστιν δὲ τὰ δένδρα τὰ λιβανοφόρα, οὐ μεγάλα λίαν, ἐδὲ ὑψηλά· φέρει δὲ ἐπὶ τῷ φλοιῷ πησσύμενον τὸν λίβανον, ὥς τινα καὶ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ δένδρων δακρύει τὸ κόμμι. Μεταχειρίζεται ἡ ὁ λίβανος ὑπὸ δέλων βασιλικῶν, καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τιμωρίᾳ πεμπομένων. Ἐπίνοσοι δὲ δεσπῶς οἱ τόποι. Καὶ τοῖς μὲν παραπλέουσι λοιμοὶ, τοῖς ἡ ἐργαζομένοις πάντῃ θανάτῳ δέσσει. Ἔτι δὲ καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐνδοχὴν τῆς τροφῆς εὐχερῶς ἀπολλύμενοι. Ἔστι δὲ ἐν ἀκρωτήριον τῷ κόσμῳ μέγιστον, ἀποβλέπον εἰς ἀνατολὴν, ὃ καλούμενος Σάαγρος, ἐφ' οὗ

tin, coral, storax, and other commodities of the same sort as are carried to Moosa. For the king, the merchants carry plate wrought or chased, specie, horses, images, and cloth of the finest sort of one colour.

The exports are all sorts of native produce, frankincense, aloes, and the same articles as are procured at the other ports on the coast. The best season for the voyage is the same as that for Moosa, but rather earlier.

Beyond Kanè the bay called Sakhalites commences; it is of vast extent, and of considerable depth, and forms the coast of the frankincense country, a mountainous and impracticable tract, incommoded with fogs and a dark atmosphere in all the parts where the trees grow that produce the frankincense. These trees are neither large or lofty, but the substance exudes from the bark, and becomes consistent, like the gum that weeps from several of our trees in Egypt.

The incense is collected by the king's slaves, condemned to this service as a punishment; for the country is unhealthy in the extreme, pestilential even to those who navigate on the coast, and certain death to the wretched sufferers employed in the collection; who, if they escape death from the climate, are sure to perish by want and neglect.

The coast which forms the border of this country terminates at a promontory called¹ Suágros, the largest cape in the Cape Far-
taque.

² ἢ Gelenius.

³ ἢ Gelenius.

¹ Suágros is so called from a palm-tree, that bears a fruit of the same name. It forms the entrance of a vast inlet to the Red sea with the opposite cape Gardafui, which lessens as it approaches the straits of Bab-el-mandeb. It is not the largest cape in the world, but one of the most important to the navigator. Here the bay Sakhalites of the

Periplus terminates, and the Sakhalites of Ptolemy commences. Ptolemy is probably the more correct, as Sahar or Sachar, written Schæhr, is to the east of Fartaque; but the oriental geographers seem to countenance two bays of this name, as there is another Sahar not far from Kanè.

Φρέριόν ἐστὶ τῆς χώρας καὶ λιμὴν καὶ ἀπο-
θήκη τῶ συναγομένῃ λιθάνῃ. Καὶ κατὰ
τῆτον ἐν τῷ πελάγει νῆσος, ἀνὰ μέσον
τάτῃ, καὶ τῷ πέραν ἀκρωτηρίῳ τῶν ἀρω-
μάτων, τῷ Συάγρῳ συνορίζουσα μάλλον,
ἡ Διοσκορίδου καλουμένη, μεγίστη μὲν,
ἐρημος δὲ καὶ κάθυγρος· ἔχουσα ποταμὸς
ἐν αὐτῇ, καὶ κροκοδείλους, καὶ ἐχίδνας
πλάσας, καὶ σαύρας ὑπερμεγέθεις, ὧν
τὸ κρέας ἐοικέναι, τὸ δὲ λίπος τήκεται, καὶ
αὐτὸ ἐλαίου χρώνται. Καρπὸν δὲ οὔτε
ἀμπέλιν, ὅτε σίτη, ἢ νῆσος φέρει. Οἱ δὲ
ἐνοικεῖντες αὐτὴν ὀλίγοι, κατὰ μίαν πλευ-
ρὰν τῆς νήσου τῆς πρὸς Ἀπαρκτίαν οἰ-
κοῦσι, καὶ τὸ μέρος ἀποβλέπει τὴν ἡπειρον.
Εἰσὶν δὲ ἐπίξῃνοι καὶ ἐπίμικτοι, Ἀράβων
τε καὶ Ἰνδῶν, καὶ ἔτι Ἑλλήνων τῶν πρὸς
ἐργασίαν ἐκπλέοντων. Φέρει δὲ ἡ νῆσος
χειλῶνιν, τὴν τε ἀληθινὴν καὶ χερσαίαν,
καὶ τὴν λευκὴν, πλάσῃν δὲ καὶ διάφορον,
καὶ τοῖς ὀστέοις μέζουσιν τὴν τε ὀρενὴν
ὑπερμεγέθη, καὶ παχύτατον ὄσρακον ἔχου-
σαν. Οὗ τὰ παρὰ τὴν κοιλίαν μέρη τὰ
ἐγχρῆζοντα, τομὴν οὐκ ἐπιδέχεται, καὶ
πυρρότερα ὄντα. Ὀλοτελῶς δὲ τὰ εἰς
γλωσσόκομα καὶ πινακίδια καὶ μαγίδια
ἐγχρῆζοντα, καὶ τοιαύτην τινα⁵ χρῆσιν
κατατέμνεται. Γίνεται δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ κιν-
νάβαρι τὸ λεγόμενον Ἰνδικόν, ἀπὸ τῶν

world, and projecting towards the east.
There is a garrison here for the protec-
tion of the country, and a harbour, on
which are the storehouses for the frank-
incense collected here from the whole
coast.

Between this cape and Arômata, [or
Gardafui] on the opposite continent of
Africa, lies the island of Dioscórida; it is
nearer the Arabian than the African
coast, very large, but low and marshy,
and thinly inhabited, abounding with
crocodiles, snakes, and enormous lizards,
and not destitute of rivers. The lizards
serve for food, and their fat is melted to
answer the purpose of oil; but there is
neither wheat or grapes.

The few people that inhabit this island
live all on the north side, looking towards
Arabia; they are a mixed race, consist-
ing of foreigners, Arabs, Indians, and
Greeks, who leave their country to trade
in the productions of the place: these
consist chiefly of the sea and land tor-
toise, and a particular species called the
white, which is here in great abundance,
and of the best quality: besides these
there is another species found in the
mountains, with a shell of remarkable
solidity; the part towards the belly is
tinged with yellow, and resists the tool;
it is employed therefore, without cutting,
to form boxes, cases, tablets, stands, and
other toys of the same kind. The only
other production worth noticing is the
gum called dragon's blood, which ex-

⁴ ὅτι ἀριστοί, ὡς οἱ σεναιὶ Gelenius.

⁵ This is not correct; Socotra lies nearest to
Gardafui.

⁶ Whether tinged is a proper interpretation of
ἐγχρῆζοντα or not, I cannot determine; but it is
twice used in this passage, and will bear that sense
in both places. Hudson and Stuckius have very

⁷ γρόνη Gelenius.

wisely suppressed it.

⁸ Cinnabar in the original; which, Chambers
says, is a misnomer for dragon's blood: this drug
is still obtained in Socotra. It is remarkable that
we find nothing of Socotrine aloes, as much cele-
brated by the ancients as at present.

δένδρων ὡς δάκρυ συναγόμενον. Ἵππο-
πίπτη μὲν οὖν, ὥσπερ ἡ Ἀζανία Χαρι-
βαήλ, καὶ τῷ Μαφάρῳ τυράνῳ, καὶ ἡ
νῆσος αὐτῷ τῷ βασιλεῖ τῆς λιβανωτο-
φόρου. Συνεχρήσαντο δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ ἀπὸ
Μύζα τινές, καὶ τῶν ἐκπλεόντων διὰ Λι-
μυρικῆς καὶ Βαρυγάζων, ὅσοι κατὰ τύ-
χην εἰς αὐτὴν ἐπιβάλλοντες, ὄρυσζαν τε καὶ
σῖτον καὶ ὀθόνην Ἰνδικὴν ἀντικαταλασσό-
μενοι, καὶ σώματα θηλυκὰ διὰ σπάνιν
ἐκεῖ προχωρῶντα, χελώνην ἀντεφορτίζοντο
πλείστην. Νῦν δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν βασιλέων ἡ
νῆσος ἐκμεμίσθεται, καὶ παραφυλάσ-
σεται. Μετὰ δὲ τῷ Σάαγρον κόλπος ἐστὶν
συναφής, ἐπὶ βάθος ἐνδύων εἰς τὴν ἡπει-
ρον, Ὁμανα, ἑαδίας ἔχων ἑξακοσίας τὸ
διαπέραμα. Καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν ὑψηλὰ ὄρη
πετρῶδη καὶ ἀπόκοπα ἀνθρώπων ἐν σπη-
λαίοις κατοικούντων, ἐπὶ ἑαδίας ἄλλης
πεντακοσίους. Καὶ μετ' αὐτοὺς ὄρμος
ἀποδεεγμένος, τῷ Σαχαλίτῃ λιβάου
πρὸς ἐμβολήν, Μόχα λιμὴν λεγόμενος.
Εἰς ἣν ἀπὸ Κανὴ συνήθως πλοῖα πέμ-
πεται τινα. Καὶ παραπλέοντα ἀπὸ Λι-
μυρικῆς ἢ Βαρυγάζων, ὁψινοῖς καιροῖς
παραχειμάσαντα, παρὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν
πρὸς ὀθόνιον καὶ σῖτον καὶ ἔλαιον, λίβανον

udes from a particular tree, and hardens
to a consistence.

The same circumstance takes place here
as has been already mentioned relative to
Azania; for as the ports in that part of
Africa are subject to Charibaël and Kho-
laibus, so is this island of Dioscórida un-
der the power of the king of the incense
country.

The merchants of Moosa, who trade
to Barugáza and Limúrikè occasionally
frequent this island; and, when they
touch here, they purchase abundance of
tortoise shell in exchange for their rice,
wheat, and cottons or muslins; they like-
wise find a good market for female slaves,
as the residents have few women in the
island at present. The king of Hadra-
maut has a garrison here, but the cus-
toms are set to farm. Guzerat and
Canara.

From Suágros [or Fartaque] the ad-
joining bay of Ὁμανα takes a large
sweep of considerable depth into the main,
six hundred stadia in extent; and towards
the termination of this the shore is high,
rocky, and steep to, for five hundred
stadia more, the country is inhabited by
a tribe who dwell in caverns.

At this boundary is the established port
for the reception of the Sachalitic in-
cense, called Moskha; it is a place regu-
larly frequented by the vessels from Kanè;
while the fleets returning from Baru-
gáza and Limúrikè, if they happen to
lose the season, are obliged to lie here,
[during the adverse monsoon,] and ex-
change part of their cargo, such as wheat,
oil [of fefamum,] and cottons, for frank- Schæhr?

* Now Hadramaut.

* Socotra is at this day dependant on the sheik
of Keschin.

^b This is the bay Sachalites of Ptolemy, and
Sahar or Schæhr is near the centre of it, which I

apprehend to be the Moskha of the Periplus, whe-
ther by mistake of the name Muskhath, transposed
to this place, I cannot say; but he drops an ex-
pression, as if he called this bay Sachalites, as well
as Ptolemy.

ἀντιφορτίζουσιν. Παρ' ὅλον δὲ τὸ Σαχα-
λίτην χώματι κειμένῳ καὶ ἀφυλάκτῳ,
δυνάμει θεῶν τινι, τῆτον τὸν τόπον ἐπιτη-
ρέωνται. Οὔτε γὰρ λάθρα, ἔτε φανερώς,
χωρὶς βασιλικῆς δώσεως εἰς πλοῖον ἐμ-
βληθῆναι δύναται. Καὶν χόνδρον τις ἄρη,
οὐ δύναται πλεῦσαι τὸ πλοῖον ἑὰπὸ λι-
μένος, δίχα δαίμονος. Ἐπ' ἄλλας σα-
δίως ὡς χιλίης πεντακοσίας, ἕως Ἀσί-
χωνος ἄχρι τῆς γῆς παρατείνει. Καὶ
κατὰ τὸ ἀπολήγον αὐτῆς μέρος ἐπὶ τὰ νῆσοι
πρόκεινται κατὰ τὸ ἔξῃς, αἱ Ζηνοβίαι λε-
γόμεναι. Μεθ' αὐτῆς ἄλλη παράκειται
χώρα βάρερος, ἐκ ἐπὶ τῆς αὐτῆς βα-
σιλείας, ἀλλ' ἤδη τῆς Περσίδος. Ἦν ἀφ'
ὑψους παραπλέοντι ὡς σαδίως διχιλίως
ἀπὸ τῶν Ζηνοβιῶν, συναντᾷ νῆσος Σαρά-
πιδος λεγομένη, ἀπὸ σαδίων ἑ γῆς ὡσὲν
ἑκατὸν εἰκοσι. Ταύτης τὸ μὲν πλάτος
ἔστιν ὡσὲν σαδίων διακοσίων, οἰκεῖται δὲ
κώμαις τρισὶν, καὶ ἀνδράποισι ἱεροῖς Ἰχ-

incense, which is supplied by the king's
agents or factors.

Throughout the whole tract called
Sakhalites, frankincense lies piled up in
heaps, without watch or guard to secure
it, as if it was committed to some divine
power for protection. For without the
king's permission it is impossible to con-
vey it on shipboard either openly or clan-
destinely: even if a single grain were em-
barked, it would be a marvellous chance
if the vessel escaped seizure.

From Moskha the coast extends fifteen
hundred stadia more to the district of
A'fikho; and at the termination of this
tract lie the seven islands of Zenobius in
succession, [which correspond to the mo-
dern Curia Muria.]

The country which succeeds next to
these islands is not under Arabian but
Persian jurisdiction, the natives of which
are uncivilized. A vessel after passing
this coast stands off to sea from the
islands of Zenobius during a course of
two thousand stadia, till she reaches the
island of Sarápis, that lies an hundred
and twenty stadia from the main. Sará-
pis is two hundred stadia in breadth, and
divided into three districts, each of which
has its village. The natives are held sa-

Hafek of
Al Edrissi.

⁶ ἀπὸ δαίμονος δίχα λεγόμενος Gelenius.

^c The author had terminated his Sakhalites at Suágros, and yet he seems here to adopt it again. This is in harmony with Ptolemy; and however O'mana and Moskha may suggest the idea of Oman and Muskhath, I shall prove immediately, by the islands which follow, that we are not yet within four hundred miles of the modern Oman, and that the distance to Muskhath is half as much more.

^d Hafek means weedy; and such is the sea on this coast.

^e These islands are ascertained by another called Sarápis, now Mazeira, which succeeds; and by measuring back 1500 stadia, or 150 miles, to Moskha, a reference to the map will immediately shew

that Moskha is at Shæhr. I suspect that the author has misapplied a name; for Ptolemy's Sakhalites is evidently derived from Sakhal, equivalent to Sahar or Schæhr.

^f Ἀφ' ὑψους, which Hudson renders *ex supernis locis*, should be read ἀφ' ὑψους, and rendered *off shore*, through the open sea.

^g Were it possible to doubt the assumption of Curia Muria for Zenobius, the island of Sarápis must infallibly determine the question: for there is no other island but Mazeira on the whole coast of Arabia of this extent, and the distance corresponds.

θυσφάγων. Γλώσση δὲ Ἀραβικῇ χρω-
ται, καὶ περιζώμασι φύλλων κακίνων.
ἔχει δὲ ἡ νῆσος χελώνην ἰκανὴν καὶ διά-
φορον. Ἐξαρτίζουσι δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν συνή-
θως οἱ ἀπὸ Κανῆς σκάφας καὶ ἐφόλκια.
Περικαλπίζοντι δὲ τὴν ἐχομένην ἤπειρον,
εἰς αὐτὴν τὴν ἄρκιον ἥδη περὶ τὴν εἰσβολὴν
τῆς Περσικῆς θαλάσσης, καινται νῆσοι
ᾗ πλεόμεναι, Καλαίου λεγόμεναι νῆσοι,
αὐτὸν ἐπὶ σαδίας διαχιλίας⁷ παρεσαμέναι
τῇ χώρᾳ. Ποιητοὶ δὲ οἱ κατοικῶντες αὐ-
τὴν ἄνθρωποι, καὶ ἡμέρας οὐ πολὺ τι
βλέποντες. Περὶ δὲ τὴν ἐσχάτην κεφαλὴν
τῶν Παπίς νήσων, καὶ τὸ λεγόμενον Κα-
λὸν ὄρος, ἐκδέχεται μετ' ἑὸς πολὺ τὸ σῶμα
τῆς Περσικῆς. Καὶ πλεῖσαι κολυμβή-
σεις εἰσὶν τῇ πιπικίᾳ κόγχῃ. Τέτρα δὲ τῇ
σώματος ἐκ τῶν εὐνύμων εἰσὶν ὅρῃ μέγιστα
λεγόμενα Σαβῶ. Ἐκ δὲ τῶν δεξιῶν ἄν-
τικρυς ἀφορώμενον ἄλλο τρογγύλον ὑψη-
λὸν, τὸ Σεμειράμειως λεγόμενον. Καὶ

cred, and are Ikhthuóphagi; they speak
the language of Arabia, and wear an
apron of ^h cocoa leaves. The produce of
the island is tortoise shell of superior qua-
lity in great abundance, which the boats
and small vessels from Kanè come here
regularly to purchase.

From Sarápis the course is along the
adjoining continent [till you arrive at
ⁱ Kóródamon or Ras-el-had,] when it turns
to the north, [if your destination is] to
the gulph of Persia; and beyond this
promontory, at the distance of two thou-
sand stadia, lie the islands of Kalaioo or
Kalaia: these islands stretch along pa-
rallel to the coast [in distinct lines,] and
you may sail through them, or between
them and the shore, [their modern name
is Swadi, or Swardi, a corruption of ^k So-
har-di.] The inhabitants are a treache-
rous race, and during day-light their
fight is affected by the rays of the sun.

Beyond these islands of Kalaioo there
is another group called Pápias, at the
termination of which lies the Fair moun-
tain, not far from the entrance of the
Persian gulph; and [in that gulph is]
the pearl fishery.

At the straits which form the entrance
into this sea, you have on the left that
vast mountain called Sabo, and opposite Mofandon.
to it on the right a lofty round moun-
tain which takes the name of ¹ Semi-
ramis.

Now Elbours
Ehows
Chowfe.

⁷ πλιόντι Stuckius: but διαπλιόμενοι or παραπλιόμενοι seems wanting.

⁸ Perhaps παραπλεούμεαι.

^h Κακίνων. The expression is remarkable, and
possibly the most ancient mention of the cocoa
palm.

ⁱ Kóródamon is obtained from Ptolemy; it an-
swers to cape Ras-el-had, and the Periplus marks
it without a name by a change in the direction of
the course to the north. By taking a liberty with
the text, I bring the islands of Kalaioo or Kalaia
into their position two hundred miles north of
Ras-el-had: and there is at this day a port or bay

called Kalaia to the north of that cape.

^k Sohar-di, or dive, signifies the islands of Sohar;
and Sohar is a port once as much frequented, as
Mufkhat now is, for the Indian trade.

¹ Elbours signifies a fire-tower of the Parfees or
Guebres, and the mountain has its name from the
resemblance it bears to one of those buildings.
Possibly the title of Semíramis has some allusion to
the same ancient race.

μέσος αὐτὸς ὁ διάπλος τῷ ζώματος ὡς
σαδίας ἑξακοσίας, δι' οὗ μέγιστος καὶ
πλατύτατος ἔς τὰς ἐσωτάτας τόπας ὁ
Περσικὸς κόλπος ἀναχέεται. Καθ' ὃν ἐν
τοῖς ἐσχάτοις αὐτῷ μέρεσιν ἐμπορίον ἔστιν
νόμιμον, λεγόμενον ἢ Ἀπολόγῃ, κειμένη
κατὰ Πασίνου χώραν, κατὰ ποταμὸν
Εὐφράτην.

INDIA.

ΠΑΡΑΠΛΕΥΣΑΝΤΙ δὲ τῷτο τὸ ζῶμα
τῷ κόλπῳ, μετὰ δρόμους ἕξ, ἕτερον ἐμπο-
ρίον ἔστιν τῆς Περσίδος, ἢ λεγομένη Ὀ-
μανα. Ἐξαρτίζεται δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν συνή-
θως. Ἀπὸ μὲν Βαρυγάζων εἰς ἀμφο-
τέρα ταῦτα τῆς Περσίδος ἐμπορία, πλοῖα
μεγάλα χαλκῇ καὶ ξύλων Ὁσαγαλίνων
καὶ δοκῶν καὶ κεράτων, καὶ Φαλάγγων
Ἰσησαμένων καὶ Ἐθενίων. Εἰς δὲ τὴν
Ὀμανα καὶ ἀπὸ Κανὴ λίβανος. Καὶ ἀπὸ
Ὀμάνων εἰς τὴν Ἀραβίαν ἐντόπια ῥαπτὰ
πλοιάρια, τὰ λεγόμενα Μαδαράτε. Εἰς-
φέρεται δὲ ἀπὸ ἐκατέρων τῶν ἐμπορίων,
ὥς τε Βαρυγάζων καὶ εἰς Ἀραβίαν, πι-
νικὸν πολὺ μὲν, χεῖρον δὲ τῷ Ἰνδικῷ, καὶ
πορφύρεα, καὶ ἱματισμὸς ἐντόπιος, καὶ οἶνος,

From these straits, which are only fix
hundred stadia in breadth, the gulph of
Persia expands to a vast length and width
into the interior of the continent; and at
the extremity of the gulph [on the north-
west] there is an established port bearing
the name of Apologus, [which corre-
sponds with the O'boleh of the oriental
writers, and is the port to Bafra;] it lies
on the Euphrates, opposite to the coun-
try of ^m Pasinus.

INDIA.

[BUT if your destination is for India,
and you do not enter the gulph of Persia,]
you take your course for six days across
the bay previous to the straits for O'mana,
on the coast opposite to Arabia. It lies
in the province of ⁿ Persis, and the mer-
chants from Barugaza bring their cargoes Baroache.
both to Apologus and to this port, consist-
ing of brags, sandal wood, sesamum, ivory,
and ebony. O'mana is frequented like-
wise by the fleets which bring frank-
incense from Kanè. And from O'mana
and Apologus there is trade open with
Arabia and Barugaza for pearls in great
quantities, but inferior to those of India;
as well as for purple and manufactured
cloth, for ^o wine and dates, gold and
slaves. The vessels also sewed with coir

⁸ ἢ Ἀπολόγῃ, κειμένη κατὰ Πασίνου χώραν Gelenius. Either χώρα is wanted for ἢ κειμένη, or χώρα after κατὰ Πασίνου. Read, ἢ Ἀπολόγῃ, κειμένη κατὰ Πασίνου χώραν. Pasini or Spafini Charax is known to all the geo-
graphers. ⁹ Ὁσαγάλην Gelenius. Read, Σανδαλίαν. ¹ Ἰσησαμένων Gelenius.

^m Pasinus was an Arab chief, who possessed a
district on the Delta, formed by the mouths of the
Euphrates and Tigris, near the Hafar canal. He is
noticed by most of the ancient geographers, and
resembles the Sheik Schauib of the present day: his
successor in Trajan's time is styled Athambilus.

ⁿ It lies, properly speaking, in Karmania, and
takes its name from Oman, which is a district in
Arabia, in the angle formed by C. Ras-el-had, of

which Muskhath is now the principal port. The in-
habitants of Oman have in all ages been commer-
cial, and they had manifestly established this O'ma-
na in Karmania as a central mart between India
and Arabia.

^o Φοῖνιξ πολὺς may signify any of the different
fruits of the palm-tree, as cocoas, dates; but, joined
here with οἶνος, it is probably toddy, a wine drawn
from the species called palmeira.

καὶ Φαῖνιξ πολὺς, καὶ χρυσὸς, καὶ σάμαλα. Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Ὀμανιτικὴν χώραν ὁμοίως, ἢ παρ' ὁδὸν παράκειται βασιλείας ἑτέρας, καὶ κόλπος τῶν Τεράβδων λεγόμενος, οὗ κατὰ μέσον εἰς τὸν κόλπον παραναστένει. Καὶ παρ' αὐτὸν ποταμὸς ἐστὶν ἔχων εἰσαγωγὴν πλοίοις. Καὶ μικρὸν ἐπὶ τῇ εὐματός ἐμπορίῳ Ὀραία λεγόμενον. Καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν μεσόγειος πόλις, ἀπέχουσα ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν ἐπὶ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, ἐν ἣ καὶ βασιλεία ἡ λεγομένη. Φέρει δὲ ἡ χώρα σίτον πολὺν, καὶ οἶνον, καὶ ὄρυζαν, καὶ φοίνικα· πρὸς δὲ τὴν ἡπειρὸν ἐδὲν ἕτερον ἢ βορέα. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ἥδη τῆς ἡπείρου διὰ τὸ βάθος τῶν κόλπων ἐκ τῆς ἀνατολῆς ὑπερκερώσης, ἐκδέχεται παραθαλάσσια μέρη τῆς Σκυθίας, παρ' αὐτὸν κείμενα τὸν βορέαν, ταπεινὰ λίαν. Ἐξῆς ποταμὸς Σίνθος μέγιστος τῆς κατὰ τὴν Ἐρυθρὰν θαλάσσαν ποταμῶν, καὶ πλεῖστον ὕδωρ εἰς θαλάσσαν ἐκβάλλων. Ὡς αἰεὶ πολλῆ (καὶ πρὶν ἢ συμβαλεῖ τῇ χώρᾳ) εἰς τὸ πέλαγος ἀπαντᾷ ἀπ' αὐτῆς λευκὸν ὕδωρ. Σημεῖον δὲ ἥδη τῆς περὶ αὐτὴν χώραν ἐπιβολῆς τοῖς ἐκ πελάγους ἐρχομένοις, οἱ προαπαντῶντες ὄφεις ἐκ τῆς βάθους. Τῶν γὰρ ἐπάνω καὶ περὶ τὴν Περσίδα τόπων σημεῖον ἐστὶν αἱ

are built at O'mana for the Arabians, which they call Madarátè.

East from O'mana the course is directed along the coast of another kingdom, and the bay of the Terabdi; the jurisdiction of the king extends to the middle of this bay, terminating at a river which will admit ships; and here there is a mart of no great importance called P Oraia.

But there is a large city inland at seven days distance from the sea, which is the residence of the king. At Oraia there is abundance of wheat, rice, wine, and toddy. But the interior produces nothing but gum.

Beyond this tract, the continent winds from the east round the indenture of several bays till it reaches the sea coast of Scindi, which is exceeding low, and lies towards the ⁹ north. Then follows the ^{The Indus.} Sinthus, the largest of all the rivers in the Erythræan sea, and rolling with the greatest volume of water; so that while you are at a distance, and before you arrive near shore, you meet with white water quite out at sea.

The prognostic of approaching this river, is the appearance of snakes rising up from the bottom, and floating on the surface, and a similar occurrence of a reptile called Graæ is noticed on the coast of Persis.

² ἢ ὁ Gelenius.

^P For Oraia or Horais I can discover nothing equivalent; it may be somewhere near Tiz, and the inland city Phoora: but the author passes this coast so hastily, that I doubt whether he visited it. I am the more confirmed in this doubt by his mention of wine, rice, and wheat on a coast where Nearchus found little besides fish, dates, and camel's flesh. Oraia may as well be Guadel as Tiz.

⁹ This whole passage is obscure; it is true there are several bays, and the last of these is sheltered on the east by cape Eirus or Monze; and from cape Monze to the Indus the coast is low; but the Indus does not lie north from that cape. I think the author is confused, because he is ignorant, he probably failed by the monsoon, and was never on this coast.

λεγόμεναι γράαι. Ἐπὶ δὲ οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς ἔχει τόματα, λεπτὰ δὲ ταῦτα καὶ τεναγώδη. Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα διάπλεν ἑκ ἔχει, μόνον δὲ τὸ μέσον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ τὸ παραθαλάσσιον ἐμπορίον ἐστὶν βαρβαρικόν. Πρόκειται δὲ αὐτῷ νησίον μικρόν, καὶ κατὰ νῆτον μεσόγειος ἡ μητρόπολις αὐτῆς τῆς Σκυθίας Μινναγάρα. Βασιλεύεται δὲ ὑπὸ Πάρθων, συνεχῶς ἀλλήλως ἐκδιωκόντων· τὰ μὲν οὖν πλοῖα κατὰ τὴν βαρβαρικὴν διορμίζονται, τὰ δὲ φορτία πάντα εἰς τὴν μητρόπολιν ἀναφέρεται διὰ τῶν ποταμῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τὸ ἐμπορίον ἱμαλισμὸς ἀπλῶς ἱκανός, καὶ νόθος οὐ πολὺς, ³ πολύμιτα, καὶ χρυσόλιθον, καὶ κοράλλιον, καὶ σύραξ, καὶ λίθαιος, καὶ ὑαλᾶ σκεύη, καὶ ἀργυρώματα, καὶ χρῆμα, οἶνος δὲ οὐ πολὺς. Ἀντιφορτίζεται ἣ κόσος, βδέλλα, λύκιον, νάρδος, καὶ ⁴ καλλιανὸς λίθος, καὶ σάπφειρος, καὶ σερικὰ δέρματα, καὶ ὀθόνιον, καὶ ἡμα σερικόν, καὶ Ἰνδικὸν μέλαν. Ἀνάγονται δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ πλεόντες μετὰ τῶν Ἰνδικῶν περὶ τὸ Ἰέλιον μῆνα, ὅς ἐστιν Ἐπιφί. Δυσεπίβολος μὲν, ἐπιφορώτατος δὲ ἐκένων καὶ συντομώτερος ὁ πλῆς. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν Σίνθον ποταμὸν ἕτερός ἐστιν κόλπος ἀθέρητος παρὰ τὸν βορέαν. Ὀνομάζεται δὲ Εἰρινόν. Ἐπιλέγεται δὲ ὁ μὲν μικρόν, ὃ ἦ μέγα. Πελάγη δὲ ἐστὶν ἀμ-

The Sinthus has seven mouths, mostly Indus. shallow, and rather fens than streams. They are all unnavigable, except one in the centre, upon which lies the mart of Barbárikè near the sea, under cover of a small island. But inland from Barbárikè, is the capital of the province called Minnagar, the residence of the king; and the government is in the possession of a body of Parthians divided into two parties, which, as either of them prevails, drives its opponents out of the country.

The vessels, upon their arrival, anchor at Barbárikè and their cargoes are carried up by the river to Minnagar. The imports are,

A large assortment of plain cloth, and some of fraudulent manufacture. Fine cloth, chrysolites, coral, storax, frankincense, vessels of flint glass, silver plate, wine, and specie.

The exports are, kostus, gum bdellium, ¹ lukion, spikenard, ² callaip stone, sapphires, furs or hides from the country of the Sères, fine muslins, sewing silk and indigo. The best season for the voyage is in July or Epiphi; which, though liable to difficulties at the commencement, is still most convenient upon the whole, and shortens the passage to a considerable degree.

To the east of the Sinthus [or Indus] you meet with another bay, called ³ Eirinus, hitherto ⁴ unexplored, which has an inclination to the north: there are in fact two bays, or rather one divided into two,

³ πολύμιτα Gelenius.

¹ Λυκίον, box-thorn.

² Λίθος καλλιανός, a stone from Kallian, Gallian or Bombay.

³ Eirinus is the bay of Kutch or Kartch, equally unexplored [ἀθέρητος] at the present day, so

⁴ καλλιανός Gelenius.

called from Kacha, a town at the head of the bay.

⁴ Ἀθέρητος, *visu difficilis* in Hudson: but *θεῶν* signifies more than barely seeing; it implies contemplation, examination. Stephens in voce *accurate investigo*.

φότερα τεναγώδη, καὶ δίνας ἐλαφράς ἔχοντα καὶ συνεχεῖς καὶ μακρὰς ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς. Ὡς πολλάκις τ' ἡπείρου μὴδὲ βλεπομένης, ἀποκέλλειν τὰ πλοῖα· ἐνδοτέρω δ' ὑποληφθέντα, καὶ ἀπολλύμενα. Τούτοις δὲ ὑπερήκει τῷ κόλπῳ ἀκρωτήριον ἐπικαμπές ἀπὸ τῶ ὄρμου μετὰ τὴν ἀναβολὴν καὶ τὸν νότον ὡς εἰς τὴν δύσιν, ἐκπεριλαμβάνων αὐτὸν τὸν κόλπον λεγόμενον Βαράκης, ἧσας ἐπὶ αὐτῷ ἐμπερικλημμένος. Οὗ περὶ μὲν τὰς ἀρχὰς οἱ περιπεσόντες, ἐλθόντες ὀπίσω καὶ εἰς τὸ πέλαγος ἀναδραμόντες, ἐκφεύγουσιν· οἱ δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν κατακλιθεῖντες τὴν τῷ Βαράκῃ κοιλίαν ἀπόλλυνται. Τό τε γὰρ κύμα μέγα καὶ βαρὺ λίαν, ἡ δὲ θάλασσα ταραχώδης καὶ θολερὰ, καὶ δίνας ἔχουσα καὶ ραώδης ἐλίγχει. Ὁ δὲ βυθὸς ἐν τισὶ μὲν ἀποκοπος, ἐν τισὶ δὲ πετρώδης, καὶ ἀπόξυρος, ὥστε τέμνεσθαι τὰς παρακειμένας ἀγκύρας ἀντέχειν ἀποκοπυμένας, αὐτὰς δὲ καὶ συντριβομένας ἐν τῷ βυθῷ. Σημεῖον δὲ αὐτοῖν τοῖς ἀπὸ πελάγους ἐρχομένοις, οἱ προαπαντῶντες ὄφεις ὑπερμεγέθεις καὶ μέλανες. Ἐν γὰρ τοῖς μετὰ ταῦτα τόποις, καὶ τοῖς περὶ Βαρυγάζαν, μικρότεροι καὶ τῷ χρώματι χλωροὶ καὶ χρυσίζοντες ὑπαντῶσι. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν Βαράκην εὐθύς ἐστιν ὁ Βαρυγάζων κόλπος, καὶ ἡ πρὸς τῆς Ἀριακῆς χώρας τῆς Μαμβάρυ βασι-

a larger and a smaller, the sea in both is shallow with continual eddies and ^h overfalls, extending a great way from shore; so that vessels are frequently aground before they come within sight of land, or are caught in the indraft, and driven upon the breakers.

At the entrance of this gulph a promontory rises, [on the right] called Ba-^{Jiggat.} rākè, from the point of which the shore takes first a south-east direction, and then winds round to the west, encircling the bay, and including the seven islands which lie off Barākè. Vessels which make this cape keep off from the entrance of the gulph, to escape the danger; but if they are once embayed beyond the cape, there is no possibility of retreat; for the wave is so large and heavy, the sea so troubled and boisterous, the eddies and whirlpools so numerous, that it is certain destruction. The soundings likewise are as fallacious as the other dangers are imminent; for you have one instant an abrupt cast in deep water, and the next you are upon a rocky bottom, so broken and sharp, as to chafe the cables carried out to steady the vessel, and finally make them part from the anchor.

The approach to this bay however is discoverable by the appearance of snakes again, very large and black. The same occurrence takes place also along the coast, and at Barugāza; but the snakes there are smaller, paler, and of a colour approaching to gold.

Next to the bay of Barākè succeeds Kutch, the gulph of Barugāza, and on this gulph is the commencement of the whole [pen-^{The gulph of} insula] of India, as well as the kingdom Cambay.

^s ὑπερίχου Hudson.

⁶ Ἀριακῆς Gelenius. But *Λαριακῆς* from *Lárikè* is Ptolemy's name for Guzerat.

^h Δίνας ἐλαφράς, eddies in shoal water.

ⁱ The bay of Kutch and the gulph of Cambay embrace two sides of the province of Guzerat:

the other part, from Jiggat to Diu head, is not here in contemplation of the author. There are seven islands north of Jiggat in Dalrymple's chart.

λείας ἀρχή, καὶ τῆς ὅλης Ἰνδικῆς οὐσα. Ταύτης τὰ μὲν μεσόγεια τῆς Σκυθίας συνορίζοντα Ἰβηρία, καλεῖται δὲ τὰ παρὰ θαλάσσια Συραστρήνη. Πολύφορος ἢ ἡ χώρα σίτου, καὶ ὀρύζης, καὶ ἐλαίας σησαμίνης, καὶ βετύρης, καὶ καρπῶν, καὶ ἔξ αὐτῆς Ἰνδικῶν ὀφονίων τῶν χυδαίων. Βακχολία δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ πλεῖστα, καὶ ἄνδρες ὑπερμεγέθεις τῷ σώματι, καὶ μέλανες τῇ χροίᾳ. Μητρόπολις δὲ τῆς χώρας Μινναγάρα, ἀφ' ἧς καὶ πλεῖστον ὀφόνιον εἰς Βαρυγάζαν κατάγεται. Σώζεται δὲ ἔτι καὶ νῦν τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιᾶς σημεῖα περὶ τὰς τόπας, ἱερὰ τε ἀρχαῖα καὶ θεμέλιοι παρεμβολῶν καὶ φρέατα μέγιστα. Ὁ δὲ παράπλευρος ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀπὸ τῆς βαρβαρικῆς μέχρι τῆς κατὰ Ἰνδὸν Ἀσάκαμπρα ἁπέναντι Βαρυγάζων ἀκρωτηρία τῆς λεγομένης Παπικῆς, ἔστιν δὲ σταδίων τρισχιλίων. Μεθ' ἧς ἕτερός ἐστι τόπος ἑσώ κυμάτων, εἰς αὐτὸν ἐνδύνων τὸν βορέαν, οὗ κατὰ μὲν τὸ σῶμα νῆσος ἔστιν ἡ λεγομένη Βαιώνης, ἐν δὲ τοῖς ἑσωτάτοις τόποις μέγιστος ποταμὸς ὁ λεγόμενος Μάις. Τῆτον τὸν κόλπον τὸ πέλαιγος ὡς σταδίων τριακοσίων οἱ πλεόντες εἰς Βαρυ-

of Mámbarus, towards [the confines of] Ariakè.

The interior part of Scindi extends [on its western limit] to ¹ Sabeiria, but the sea coast [between the Indus and Barákè] is styled Surastrénè. It is a fertile Kutch or Booge-booge country, abounding in wheat, rice, oil of sesamum, and butter or ghee; it has likewise a manufacture of fine muffins and ordinary cottons: the natives are black, and men of great stature, and feed a great quantity of cattle. The cottons fabricated here are exported by the merchants of Minnagar to Barugáza.

In this kingdom of Minnagar several memorials of the expedition of Alexander are still preserved; such as ancient temples, fosses of encampment, and magnificent wells. But the passage from this country to Barugáza, upon leaving Barbárikè, on the Indus, [and avoiding Barákè, or the bay of Kutch,] is direct to Asta Kampira, and the cape called Pá-Diu head, pika, which lies opposite to Barugáza, at the distance of three thousand stadia from Barbárikè. From Pápika the coast winds in again north, [to the gulph of Cambay,] and upon the turn of the coast at the entrance of the gulph lies the island of Baiônès.

Diu.

At the head of the gulph comes in the Mâis, a very large river [still called Mahi, or Myhi;] and to reach Barugáza your course is, three hundred stadia in mid-

⁷ Σαβιρία Hudson, from Ptolemy. reading, as Ἀσάκαρα occurs in Ptolemy.

⁸ Ἀσάκα and Τρασίρα Gelenius. See Ἀσάκαρα infra; the better ⁹ ἁπέναντι is wanting in Gelenius.

* In the original it is Ἀραβικῆς, which Hudson and Stuckius both suppose to be erroneous, as it certainly is: they both therefore read Ἀριακῆς, and I have followed their correction; but I believe Ἀριακῆς to be the true reading, and that Mámbarus was king of Larikè; for Larikè is Ptolemy's name for Guzerat, and Lar it is called by Abulfeda. The only objection to Ἀριακῆς is the particle πρὸς.

See the note at the conclusion.

¹ Sabeiria is a reading of Hudson's, from Ptolemy, instead of Ἰβηρία, as it is in the first edition. Ptolemy's Sabeiria is on the N. W. of the Indus.

² If I understand my author right, he means to say, that you are to run north up the gulph till Baiônès is barely visible, and then strike east across the gulph to the mouth of the Lamnaius. Three

γαζαν διαπερῶνται, ἐξ εὐωνύμων ἀκρο-
φανῇ καταλιπόντες τὴν ἡσον, καὶ εἰς αὐ-
τὴν ἀνατολὴν ἐπ' αὐτὸ τὸ σῶμα τῷ πο-
ταμῷ Βαρυγάζων. Λέγεται δὲ αὐτὸς ὁ
ποταμὸς Λαμναῖος. Ὁ τε κόλπος αὐ-
τὸς ὁ κατὰ Βαρυγάζαν στενὸς ὢν, τοῖς ἐκ
πελάγους ἐρχομένοις δυσεπίβολος. Ἡ γὰρ
εἰς τὰ δεξιά, ἢ εἰς τὰ εὐώνυμα παρα-
πίπτει. Ἡ τε ἐπιβολὴ κρείστων ἐστὶν
τῆς ἐτέρας. Ἀλλ' ἐκ μὲν τῶν δεξιῶν
κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ σῶμα τῷ κόλπῳ παράκειται
ἡ ταῖνία τραχὺ καὶ διάσπιλος, Ἡρώνη
λεγομένη, κατὰ Καμμωνὶ κόμην. Ἐκ
δὲ τῶν εὐωνύμων ἀπέναντι ταύτης, τὸ πρὸς
Ἀστακάμπρων ἀκρωτήριον, ἢ Παπικὴ λε-
γομένη, δύσφορος οὖσα, διὰ τε τὸν ῥῆν
τὸν περὶ αὐτὴν, καὶ διὰ τὸ ἀποκόπτεν τὰς
ἀγκύρας, τραχὺν ὄντα καὶ πετρώδη τὸν
βυθόν. Κἂν κατ' αὐτὸν δέ τις ἐπιβάλη
τὸν κόλπον, αὐτὸ τὸ σῶμα τῷ κατὰ Βα-
ρυγάζαν ποταμῷ δυσέρετον ἐστὶν, διὰ τὸ
τὴν χώραν ταπεινὴν εἶναι, καὶ μηδὲν ἐγ-
χύτερον ἐνεχύρως θεωρεῖσθαι. Κἂν εὐ-
ρεθῇ, δυσέσιβλος ἐστὶν διὰ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν
τενάγη τῷ ποταμῷ. Τέττα χάριν περὶ

channel up the gulph, till Baiônès is
scarcely visible in the horizon; and then
east, strait across to the mouth of the
° Lamnaius, the river upon which Ba-

Nerbudda.
Nahar-budda?
The river of
Booda.

The bay of Barugáza is narrow, and is
approachable with difficulty from the
main sea, either on the right or the left;
but the passage on the left is safest. For
on the right, at the very entrance of the
gulph, there lies a stripe of shoal, long
and narrow, which is called Herônè, with
very rough and broken ground, directly
off the village of P Kammôni. And upon
the left, opposite to this, towards Pápika,
[or Diu head,] in the neighbourhood of
° Asta Kampra, the anchorage is rendered
dangerous by the rapidity of the current
which comes round the cape, and the
foulness of the ground which chafes the
cables. But even after you have entered
the gulph, the mouth of the Lamnaius is
extremely hard to hit, upon account of
the lowness of the country round, and
the want of landmarks in the vicinity.
And finally, when you have entered the
river, the navigation upwards is very in-
tricate, occasioned by the shoals and
marshy ground on the banks.

It is on this account that the govern-

¹ ταῖνία Gelenius.

hundred stadia, or thirty miles, are not a sufficient
distance from the island itself to the river: but
when thirty miles up the gulph, you may strike
across to the Lamnaius.

° The Lamnaius is the Námados of Ptolemy,
written Namada by the Hindoos, and now called
the Nerbudda. Baroache, that is, Barugáza, lies
about thirty miles from the mouth.

P Kammôni must be a village on the coast of
Guzerat, and manifestly not far distant from the
site of the modern Surat, in the front of Swally,
which is the road of Surat. Both Skinner and

Dalrymple place a long stripe of sand, correspond-
ing precisely with the Ταῖνία, or fillet of the Peri-
plus, which the author calls Herônè. There can
be little doubt, from its appearance on the chart,
that this is correct; and that Kammôni is the re-
presentative of Swalley.

° Written Astakampra in the original, but doubt-
less the same as Asta and Trapera before men-
tioned.

For the difficulties of navigating the gulph of
Cambay, consult Skinner, in the Oriental Navi-
gator, p. 206. See Dalrymple's Charts of Malabar.

αὐτὸν τὸν εἰσπλὺν βασιλικοὶ ἀλιεῖς ἐντόπιοι πληρώμασι μακρῶν πλοίων, ἀ λέγεται Τράππαγα καὶ Κότυμβα, πρὸς ἀπάντησιν ἐξέρχονται μέχρι τῆς Συρατρῆνης, ἀφ' ὧν ὁδηγεῖται τὰ πλοῖα μέχρι Βαρυγάζων. Κλίνουσι γὰρ εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τῆς εὐρύας τῆς κόλπου διὰ τὰ τεύχη τοῖς πληρώμασιν, καὶ ῥυμυλκῶσιν αὐτὰ σταθμοῖς ἤδη τεταγμένοις, ἀρχομένης μὲν τῆς πλήμνης αἶροντες, ἐσημένης δὲ διορμίζοντες κατὰ τινὰς ὁρμῆς καὶ κυθρίνας. Οἱ δὲ κυθρίνοι τόποι εἰσὶν τῆς ποταμῆς βαθυτέροις μέχρι Βαρυγάζων. Ἀπέχει γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς εὐρύας ἄνω παρὰ ποταμὸν καμένη ὡς σταδίων τριακοσίων. Πᾶσα μὲν ἡ Ἰνδικὴ χώρα ποταμὸς ἔχει πλέγας, ἀμπώτας τε καὶ πλήμνας μεγίστας, συναπλομένης ὑπὸ τὴν ἀνατολὴν καὶ τὴν πανσέληνον ἄχρι τριῶν ἡμερῶν, καὶ τοῖς μεταξὺ καταστήμασιν τῆς σελήνης ἐλασσημένης. Πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ἢ κατὰ Βαρυγάζων, ὥστε αἰφνίδιον τὸν τε βυθὸν ὁραῖσθαι, καὶ τινὰ μέρη τῆς ἡπείρου ποτὶ δὲ ξηρὰ, τὰ πρὸ μικροῦ πλωιζόμενα. Τῆς τε ποταμῆς, ὑπὸ τὴν εἰσβολὴν τῆς πλήμνης τῆς πελάγους ὅλα συναθρομένη, σφοδρότερον ἄνω φέρεσθαι τῆς κατὰ φύσιν ῥεύματος ἐπὶ πλέγας σταδίων. Διὸ καὶ κινδυνώδεις εἰσὶν αἱ τῶν πλοίων προσαγωγαὶ καὶ ἐξαγωγαὶ τοῖς ἀπείροις καὶ πρῶτως εἰσάγουσιν εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον. Γινομένης γὰρ ὁρμῆς ἤδη περὶ τὴν πλήμνην

ment keeps fishermen in pay, with large vessels called Tráppaga and Kotumba, to lie at the entrance of the gulph, or to watch the approach of vessels as far off as Suratrène [or the coast of Kutch,] and to pilot them up to Barugáza.

These vessels have stout crews, and from the entrance of the gulph, they tow the vessels up through the shoals, halting them at certain regular patches of deep water, styled basons; weighing at the commencement of the flood, and anchoring during the tide of ebb in these basons, which are found quite up to Barugáza. Barugáza lies at the distance of three hundred stadia from the sea.

The whole country of India abounds in rivers, which are subject to the most impetuous tides. The course of these is from the east, and they are highest at the full moon, and the three following days; after which they fall off again during the interval. But at Barugáza the violence is still more remarkable; so that in a moment, when the water drops, the bottom is laid bare, and parts of the shore are dry, where a few minutes before vessels were sailing. Again, upon the coming in of the tide, the flood from the sea drives back the water in the rivers, and their stream is reversed for a great number of miles, with a stronger current than that which they have in their natural descent to the ocean.

This makes the approach or departure of vessels highly dangerous to those who are inexperienced, or who arrive at this port for the first time. For upon the rising of the tide, the stream rushes in without remission, when no strength of

² συναπλομένης Stuckius.

³ γιγνομένης ὁρμῆς—ὅδῃ παρρημένης.

³ ἔθ' ἐν παριεμένης, αἱ ἄγκυραι οὐ κατέ-
 χουσιν. Διὸ καὶ τὰ προληφθέντα πλοῖα
 τῇ Ἰνδία, πλαγιοαθέντα ὑπὸ τ' ὀξύτητος
 τῆς ῥοῆς, ἐποκέλλει τοῖς τεναγέσι καὶ ἀνα-
 κλάται· τὰ δὲ μικρότερα καὶ περιτρέ-
 πεται· τινὰ δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰς διώρυχας
 ἀποκεκλιότα διὰ τὸ περὶ τὴν ἁμπωτὴν,
 ὅτ' ἂν μὴ διερίσῃ, τῆς πλῆμης αἰφνίδιον
 ἀπελθούσης, ὑπὸ τῆς πρώτης κεφαλῆς
 τῆς ῥοῆς ἐμπύμπλαται. Τοσαῦτα γὰρ περὶ
 τὴν ἐσβολὴν τῆς θαλάσσης γίνονται βία
 κατὰ τὰς συμμηνίας ὑπὸ τὴν νυκτερινὴν
 μάλιστα πλῆμην· ὥστε ἀρχομένης ἤδη τῆς
 ἐκσαγωγῆς, ὅτ' ἂν ἡρεμῇ τὸ πέραλος,
 ὑπ' αὐτῆς φέρεσθαι τοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς εὐμαλίας,
 παραπλήσιον βοῆς στρατοπέδου μακρόθεν
 ἀκχομένης, καὶ μετ' ὀλίγον αὐτὴν ἐπιτρέ-
 χειν τοῖς τεναγέσι ροίζῃ τὴν θάλασσαν.
 Ἐπίκειται γὰρ κατὰ τὰ τῇ Βαρυγάζῃ
 μεσόγεια, πλείονα ἔθνη, τό τε τῶν Ἀρα-
 τριῶν καὶ Ῥαχίσων, καὶ Τανθαράγων,
 καὶ τῆς ⁴ Προκλαΐδος. Ἐν οἷς ἡ Βυκέ-
 φαλος Ἀλεξάνδρεια. Καὶ τούτων ἐπ'
 ἀνὴ μαχιμώτατον ἔθνος Βακτριανῶν, ὑπὸ
 βασιλεῖα ἔσαν ἴδιον τόπον. Καὶ Ἀλεξ-

cables is a sufficient security; ships are
 'caught in an instant, and turned with
 their sides to the stream, and in that situa-
 tion driven on the shoals and lost; at the
 same time that the smaller vessels are
 completely overset. Many take refuge
 in the creeks during the tide of ebb, when
 the falling of the water has been so in-
 stantaneous as to stop their progress in a
 moment; [but this expedient is fruitless;]
 for, upon the return of the flood, the rise
 of the water is so rapid, that they are
 filled before they float. These instances
 occur most frequently during the night
 tide, at the full of the moon; for it is
 then that the flood is most violent, and
 the rise most rapid. And if, upon this
 conjuncture, you are prepared to enter
 upon the first of the flood, and when the
 sea appeared perfectly calm; you shall
 hear in a moment a rushing sound from
 the mouth of the river, like the tumult
 of battle, and the water, driving forward
 with the utmost impetuosity, covers the
 bare shoals in an instant^u.

In the country which lies inland from
 Barugāza there is a variety of tribes, such
 as the Aratrii, the Rhakhoofi, the Tan-
 tharagi, and the Prokléans: in this re-
 gion lies the Alexandria of ^x Bucéphalus,
 and farther to the north the warlike na-
 tion of the Bactrians, under a regal go-
 vernment. It was from this tract of

Prokléas
 Penge-ab?

³ ἔθ' ἐν παριεμένης αἱ κατέχουσιν ἄγκυραι Gelenius. Read, γιγνόμενης ἰσχυρῆς—ἔθ' ἐν παριεμένης.
 Gelenius.

^t προληφθέντα πλοῖα τῇ Ἰνδία. For the two
 last words, which are manifestly corrupt, I propose
 τῇ βίᾳ. See βίαι, line 11.

^u The author is so minute and graphical in his
 description of this bay, that there can be little
 doubt of his having experienced the dangers he
 details; exaggerated perhaps by his fears, or really
 alarming from the imperfect state of navigation,
 but still conformable in all essential particulars to
 the account of modern geographers. To judge

from his enlargement here, we may naturally con-
 clude that he had little acquaintance with the coast
 of Gadrōsia, where his narrative is as barren as it
 is here diffuse.

^x There is nothing, ancient or modern, to assist
 us in placing these tribes; but the mention of Bu-
 céphalus and the Bactrians marks the geography
 of the author as tending to the sources of the Indus
 and the north.

ανδρος ὀρμηθεὶς ἀπὸ τῶν μερῶν τέτων
 ἄχρι τῆ Γάγγης διήλθε, καταλιπὼν τὴν
 τε Λιμυρικὴν καὶ τὰ νότια τῆς Ἰνδικῆς.
 ἀφ' οὗ μέχρι νῦν ἐν Βαρυγάζοις παλαιαὶ
 προχωρεῖσι δραχμαὶ, γράμμασιν Ἑλλη-
 νικοῖς ἐγκοχαραγμένα, ἐπίσημα δὲ μετὰ
 Ἀλεξάνδρον βασιλευσάντων Ἀπολλόδοτον
 καὶ Μενάνδρου. Ἐνὶ δὲ αὐτῆς καὶ ἐξ ἀνα-
 τολῆς πόλεις, λεγομένη Ὀζήνη, ἐν ᾗ καὶ
 τὰ βασίλεια πρότερον ἦν. Ἀφ' ἧς πάντα
 τὰ πρὸς εὐθηνίαν τῆς χώρας εἰς Βαρυ-
 γάζα καταφέρεται, καὶ τὰ πρὸς ἐμπο-
 ρίαν τὴν ἡμετέραν, ὀνυχίνη λιθία καὶ μαρ-
 ρίνη, καὶ σινδόνες Ἰνδικαὶ, καὶ μολόχιναι,
 καὶ ἱκανὸν χυδαῖον ὀθόνιον. Κατάγεται
 δὲ δι' αὐτῆς, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀνω τόπων, ἡ
 διὰ Προκλαίδος καταφερομένη νάρδος, ἡ
 κατήδυβρίνη, καὶ ἡ πατροπαπίγη, καὶ ἡ
 καβαλίτη, καὶ ἡ διὰ τῆς παρακειμένης
 Σκυθίας. Ὁ, τε κόστος καὶ ἡ βδέλλα.
 Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον οἶνος προ-
 γυμένως Ἰταλικὸς, καὶ Λαοδικηνὸς, καὶ
 Ἀραβικὸς, καὶ χαλκὸς, καὶ κασσίτερος,
 καὶ μόλυβδος, κοράλλιον, καὶ χρυσόλιθον,

country that Alexander proceeded to the
 ὧ Ganges, leaving Limúrikè, and the whole
 peninsula on the south. And [in conse-
 quence of his expedition] ancient coins
 with Greek inscriptions are still current
 at Barugáza; some of these bear the im-
 pression of Apollódotus and ² Menander,
 who reigned [in these northern provinces]
 after the time of Alexander.

On the east of Barugáza lies the city
 of Ozênè, [still called Ougein] which Ujjain.
 was formerly the ¹ seat of government.
 From this city all the necessaries of life
 are brought down to Barugáza in abun-
 dance, and many articles for our trade;
 such as onyx stones, porcelane, the finest
 muslins, some of inferior ² quality, and
 ordinary cottons in large quantities. The
 spikenard also from ³ Prokláís [in the
 north] passes through Ozênè in its way
 to Barugáza; and of this there are several
 species, distinguished by the names of
 Kataboórinè, Patropápigè and the Kaba-
 litic. The same article, with the addition
 of kostus and gum bdellium, is intro-
 duced also through ⁴ Scindi, the province
 adjoining to Prokláís.

The imports are, wine; Italian has the
 preference; and next to that, Syrian and
⁵ Arabian; brags, tin, lead, coral, topazes,

¹ This is an unfortunate assertion, and proves
 that our author was more conversant in trade and
 navigation than history.

² Menander is well known in history as a Greek
 king of Bactria: the name of Apollódotus does not
 occur, but he was probably a Greek, who had
 established himself in some province on the west of
 the Indus. See Bayer. Hist. Bañt.

³ Ougein is still in one sense the capital of the
 Mahrattas, for it is the Jaghire of Scindia.

⁴ Μολόχιναι. Rendered also muslin of the co-
 lour of mallows.

⁵ I have already mentioned the difficulty of as-
 signing a site to Prokláís; but if Kabalites means
 Kabool, (which I believe it does,) the conveyance

of spikenard out of Tartary by Kabool, and the
 provinces on the sources of the Indus, is conform-
 able to the track of the regular caravans at this
 day. The information of our author, who acquaints
 us that spikenard came out of Tartary, is very re-
 markable; for this plant is a native of Thibet and
 Boodtan, and has been brought down in all ages
 by the same route, till of late that it has found a
 nearer conveyance by Bengal. What the other
 species are besides the Kabalitic, we have no
 means of discovering.

⁴ Scythia in the Periplus always means Scindi,
 and is probably a corruption of Scinthia.

⁵ Perhaps toddy or palm-wine.

ἱματισμοὺς ἀπλῆς καὶ νόθος παντοῖος, πολύμιτοι ζῶναι πηχυαῖαι, σύραξ, μελί-
 λωτον, ὕελος ἀργῆ, σανδαράκη, ὅσῃμι,
 δηνάριον χρυσὸν καὶ ἀργυρῶν, ἔχον ἀλλα-
 γὴν καὶ ἐπικερδεῖαν τινα πρὸς τὸ ἐντόπιον
 νόμισμα, μύρον οὐ βαρύτιμον, ἔδὲ πολὺ.
 Τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ κατ' ἐκείνας τὰς καιρὰς
 ἐσφερόμενα βαρύτιμα ἀργυρώματα, καὶ
 μουσικά, καὶ παρθέναι εὐκρίδεις πρὸς παλ-
 λακίαν, καὶ διάφορος οἶνος, καὶ ἱματισ-
 μοὺς ἀπλῆς πολυτελεῖς, καὶ μύρον ἔζοχον.
 Φέρεται δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν τόπων νάρδος, κόστος,
 βδέλλα, ἐλέφας, ὀνυχίνη λιθία, καὶ σμύρ-
 να, καὶ λύκιον, καὶ ὀθόνιον παντοῖον, καὶ
 σπρικόν, καὶ μολόχινον, καὶ ἡῆμα, καὶ πέ-
 περι μακρὸν, καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐμπορίων
 φερόμενα. Ἀποπλέουσιν δὲ κατὰ καιρὸν
 οἱ ἀπὸ τῆς Διγύπλου εἰς τὸ ἐμπόριον ἀνα-
 γόμενοι περὶ τὸν Ἰάλιον μῆνα, ὅς ἐστιν Ἐ-
 πιφί. Μετὰ δὲ Βαρυγάζα εὐθέως ἡ
 συναφὴς ἡπειρος ἐκ τῆς βορρᾶς εἰς τὸν νότον
 παρεκτείνεται. Διὸ καὶ Δακχινάδα κα-
 λέται ἡ χώρα. Δάκχανος γὰρ καλεῖται
 ὁ νότος τῇ αὐτῶν γλώσσῃ. Ταύτης ἡ μὲν
 ὑπερκειμένη πρὸς ἀνατολὰς μεσόγειος

cloth plain and adulterated, fine fashes, half yard wide, storax, sweet lotus, flint glass, cinnabar, stibium for tinging the eyes, specie, gold and silver, on which there is profit by exchanging it with the coin of the country; perfumes of no great price, and not many. Gold and silver plate of the most expensive sort for the king, at the time when the government was at Ozène. The articles imported specially for the king were musical instruments, handsome girls for the haram, wine of the best sort, cloth of the highest price, and the finest perfumes.

[These imports and exports seem all relative to the market at Ozène:] but spikenard, bdellium, kostus, onyx stones, cottons of all sorts and muslins were obtained likewise at Barugaza; and besides these, ivory, myrrh, box thorn, silks, silk thread, long pepper, and black pepper, brought from other parts on the coast.

The season for the voyage to this part of India is in July or Epiphi, [that is, during the south-west monsoon.]

From ^s Barugaza the coast of the adjoining continent stretches down from the north to the south; and the general name of the country is Dakhinabades, from ^h Dakhan, which in the native language signifies south. The interior, which lies eastward from the coast,

^s σίμμι is the common usage.

^f Κατ' ἐκείνας τὰς καιρὰς seems to imply, not the immediate time when the merchant was at Barugaza, but a former period, when the metropolis was Ougein.

^s The long detail of circumstances at Barugaza is the highest internal evidence that the Periplus is not the work of a geographer, but of a merchant who performed the voyage in person; and the correspondence of these circumstances with the present state of the country and the trade, must be highly interesting to those who are acquainted

with the geography of these regions, and the commerce of the present age. We have only one other port (Nelkunda) where the same accuracy will occur, and these two correspond with the India trade at Surat and Tellicheri, as first established by the English. Considering therefore that the Periplus is 1800 years old, the agreement is astonishing.

^h The Deccaun is the term now in use for the whole peninsula, but specially for the Nizam's dominions.

ἐμπεριέχει χώρας τὲ πολλὰς καὶ ἐρήμους,
καὶ ὄρη μεγάλα, καὶ θηρίων γένη παν-
τοίων, παρδαλῆς τὲ καὶ τίγρεις, καὶ ἐλέ-
φαντας, καὶ δράκοντας ὑπερμεγέθεις, καὶ
κροκότιας, καὶ κυνοκεφάλων πλείστα γένη.
Ἐθνη τὲ πλείστα καὶ πολυάνθρωπα, τὰ
⁶μέχρι τῆς συνέγγυς. Τῶν δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ
τῇ Δαχίναβάνδῃ δύο εἰσὶν τὰ διασημώτατα
ἐμπορία ἐπιφαινόμενα, ἀπὸ Βαρυγάζων
ἔχοντα ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν ἑκοσι πρὸς ⁷νότον.
Ἀπὸ ταύτης ὡς ἡμερῶν δέκα πρὸς ἀνα-
τολήν, ἐτέρα πόλις Ταγάρα μεγίστη.
Κατάγεται δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν πορείαις ἀμαζῶν
καὶ ἀνοδίας μεγίσταις εἰς τὴν Βαρυγάζαν.
Ἀπὸ μὲν Πιλιθάνων ὀνυχίνῃ λιθία πλεί-
στη, ἀπὸ δὲ Ταγάρων ὀφόνιον πολὺ χυ-
δαῖον, καὶ σινδόνων παντοῖα, καὶ μαλό-
χινα, καὶ τινὰ ἄλλα τοπικῶς ἐκῆς προ-
χωρεῖντα φορτία τῶν παραθαλασσίων
μερῶν. Ὁ δὲ ὅλος παράπλευς μέχρι τῆς
Λιμυρικῆς εἰσὶν σταδίων ἑπτακισχιλίων,
πλείστοι δὲ εἰς αἰγιαλόν. Τοπικὰ δὲ ἐμ-
πόρια καὶ τὸ ἐξῆς κείμενα, Ἀκαβάρες,
⁸Οὔππαρα, Καλλίενα πόλις, ἡ ἐπὶ τῶν

comprehends a number of regions, some
desert, and others mountainous: in these
parts there are wild animals of all sorts,
leopards, tigers, elephants, prodigious fer-
pents, hyenas, and baboons of different
species. There is a variety also of pro-
vinces, extremely populous, quite to the
¹Ganges. But in that tract which is
called the Dakhan, or South, Plithana and
Tagara are two inland marts of great
preeminence: Plithana lies at the distance
of twenty days south from Barugaza,
and ²Tagara, which is an immense city, Deoghur.
ten days east from Plithana.

The produce of these two places is
brought down to Barugaza by land car-
riage, through a country where the roads
are obstructed with extraordinary diffi-
culties: from Plithana great quantity of
the onyx stone; and from Tagara ordi-
nary cottons, common muslins, and some
of the finest sort, besides a variety of other
articles which reach that capital from the
countries on the coast.

The extent of the navigation from Ba-
rugaza to Limurikè [which is the mo-
dern Canara] amounts to seven ¹thou-
sand stadia down the coast. The marts
frequented by the natives lie in the fol-
lowing order; first, Akabarous and Oop-
para, or Sooppara, [which are apparently
in the province of Guzerat,] and then
Kalliena, [which is Gallian in the vi-
cinity of Bombay and in the district of
Ariakè, the pirate coast of the ancients,
the Konkan or Mahratta country of the
moderns.]

⁶ See Stuckius.⁷ Πιλιθάνη is wanting.⁸ Συμάρη Ptolemæi.

¹ Μέχρι τῆς συνέγγυς. Corrected by Stuckius
μέχρι τῆς Γάγγυς.

² Tagara is Deoghur, since called Elore, the
head of the province of Dowlatabad, and within
six or seven miles of the modern Aurungabad.
Plithana is said by Captain Wilford to be Pulta-

nah; but I have not found it in Rennell, De la Ro-
chette, or any other map that I have seen. πορεί-
αις and ἀνοδίας relate to the roads through the
Ghauts.

¹ This statement is too large.

Σαραγάνῃ τῇ πρεσβυτέρῃ χρόνων ἐμπο-
ριον ἐνδεσμον γινόμενον. Μετὰ γὰρ τὸ
καταρχεῖν αὐτὸν Σανδάνην, ἐκωλύθη ἐπὶ
πολύ. Καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐκ τύχης εἰς τὰς
τῆς τόπας ἐσβάλλοντα πλοῖα Ἑλληνικὰ,
μετὰ φυλακῆς εἰς Βαρύγαζαν εἰσάγεται.
Μετὰ δὲ Καλλίαναν ἄλλα ἐμπόρια το-
πικὰ, Σήμυλλα, καὶ Μανδαγόρα, καὶ
Παλακπάτμα, καὶ Μελιζεγάρα, καὶ Βυ-
ζαντίων Ὁπαρόν, καὶ Τυραννοσόας. Εἴτα
σησεκρέιεναι λεγόμεναι νῆσοι, καὶ ἡ τῶν
Αἰγιδίων, καὶ ἡ τῶν Καϊνεϊτῶν, κατὰ τὴν
λεγομένην χερσόνησον, καὶ οὗς τόπας
εἰσὶν πειραταί. Καὶ μετὰ ταύτην Λευκὴ
νῆσος. Εἴτα Νάορα καὶ Τύνδης τὰ πρῶτα
ἐμπόρια τῆς Λιμυρικῆς, καὶ μετὰ ταύτας
Μόοζιρις, καὶ Νελκύνδα, αἱ ἣν πρᾶσσε-
σαι. Βασιλείας δὲ εἰσὶν ἡ μὲν Τύνδης
Κηπροσότα, κόμη παραθαλάσσιος ἐν-
σημος, ἡ δὲ Μόοζιρις βασιλείας μὲν τῆς
αὐτῆς, ἀκμάζουσα δὲ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς Ἀρι-
ακῆς εἰς αὐτὴν ἐρχομένοις πλοίοις καὶ τοῖς

Kalliena was formerly an established
mart under the sovereignty of Saragánus;
but the present chief is Sandánes, who
has obstructed the commerce of the
Greeks [from Egypt]: so that if any of
their vessels touch here by accident, he
puts a guard on board them, and sends
them to Barugáza.

Below Kalliena the ports in succeſſion
are ^m Semulla, Mandágora, Palai-Patma,
Melizeígara, Tóparon of the Byzantians,
and Turannósboas. Then follow the islands
called Séfekreienai; then two more, de- ^{Vingorla}
nominated Aigidii and Kaineitæ, close to ^{rocks? Goa}
the peninſula [of Soonda] where there ^{and Murma-}
are PIRATES; and laſt of all the White ^{gon?}
Island^o. Angedive?

Below the White Island commences the
kingdom of Kepróbotas, ſtyled Limú-Canara.
rikè, the firſt mart of which is Naoora,
then Tundis, a large village cloſe to the
ſhore; and next to theſe Moozíris, a
flourishing place, frequented both by
the native veſſels from Ariakè, and by

⁹ Ἰσπίνουρα Stuckius.

^m There is nothing which can enable us to af-
ſign any one of theſe names to a modern repre-
ſentative. I have offered a conjecture in the Com-
mentary, that Meli-Zeigara may be Zyghur, and
Palai-Patma (the old or great city) Dunda Rajah-
poor; but it is mere conjecture. They muſt be on the
pirate coaſt and not in Guzerat, where D'Anville
places them, becauſe they are below Kalliena,
which he acknowledges to be near Bombay. They
are all mentioned by Ptolemy, who writes Bali-
patma (or the city of the god Bali) for Palai-Patma.
Mandágora has the termination ghur, (a fort,) or
oor, (a city,) which is ſtill a native uſage.

ⁿ I dare not answer for the arrangement of theſe
iſlands, as we have ſcarcely any characteristics to
direct us: but it ſuits beſt with the groups actually

on the coaſt, and the peninſula of Soonda does lie
between Ariakè and Limúrikè, that is, between the
termination of the Mahratta coaſt and Canara;
and I find no other peninſula, or Cherfoneſe as it
is called, on the whole coaſt, either above or be-
low.

^o Angedive lies off Carwar, the cape which is
the limit between the province of the Soonda Ra-
jah and Canara; and as the author makes Naoora,
next mentioned, the firſt mart of Limúrikè, and
Limúrikè is Canara, the ancient and modern boun-
dary correſpond. Ariakè or Konkan is under San-
danes; Naoora, Tundis, and Moozíris are in the
dominion of Kepróbotas, that is, Limúrikè or Ca-
nara.

Ἑλληνικοῖς. Κῆται δὲ παρὰ ποταμὸν, ἀπέχοντα ἀπὸ μὲν Τύνδεως διὰ τῷ ποταμῷ καὶ διὰ θαλάσσης ἑκατὸν πεντακοσίους, ἀπὸ δὲ τῷ κατ' αὐτὴν ἑκοσι. Ἡ δὲ Νελκύνδα ἑκατὸν πεντακοσίους ὁμοίως, διὰ τε ποταμῷ καὶ περὶ καὶ διὰ θαλάσσης· βασιλείας δὲ εἰσιν ἐτέρας τῆς Πανδίωνος· κῆται δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ παρὰ ποταμὸν, ὥστε ἀπὸ ἑκατὸν ἑκοσι τὴν θαλάσσης. Ἐτέρα δὲ κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ τόμα τῷ ποταμῷ πρόκειται κώμη Βαράκη, εἰς ἣν ἀπὸ Νελκύνδων ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναγωγῆς προκαταβαίνουσι τὰ πλοῖα, καὶ ἐπὶ σάλε διορμίζεται, πρὸς ἀνάληψιν τῶν φορτίων. Διὰ δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν ἄλλατα καὶ διάπλους ἔχει ἐλαφροῦς. Αὐτοὶ δὲ οἱ βασιλεῖς ἀμφοτέρων τῶν ἐμπορίων ἐν τῇ μεσογείᾳ κατοικῶσι. Καὶ περὶ τοὺς δὲ τὰς τόπους, τοῖς ἐκ πελάγους σημείοις ἐπιβαλὼς εἰσὶν οἱ προαπαντῶντες ὄφεις, μέλανες μὲν καὶ αὐτοὶ τὴν χροάν, βραχυτέροι δὲ, καὶ δρακοντοειδῆς τὴν κεφαλὴν, καὶ τοῖς ὀμμασιν

the Greeks from Egypt. It lies upon a river but at the distance of twenty stadia, and five hundred from Tundis; the intermediate space is equal, whether you measure by land from river to river, or take the passage by sea. [Naoora, Tundis, and Mooziris,] are succeeded by Nelkunda, which is in another province under the government of Pandion. This mart is again five hundred stadia from Mooziris, by measurement between their two rivers, or by the road on shore, or by the course of the vessel along the coast.

Nelkunda lies on a river at the distance of an hundred and twenty stadia from the sea; but at the mouth of the river there is a village called Barákè, and here the vessels, which come down from Nelkunda, lie in an open road to receive their cargoes: for the river is full of shoals, or mud banks, and the channel between them is not deep. Both Nelkunda and Barákè are subject to a king who resides in the interior.

Onoor.
Barceloor.
Mangaloor.

Perhaps Mooziris, not Barákè.
Pandion at Mádura.

Upon approaching this river you again find snakes, but they are black, and are shorter in the body [than those at the Indus]; their eyes are as red as blood, and they are crested.

¹ Μυδρίων Gelenius.

² I do not comprehend what the author means by the expression διὰ τῷ ποταμῷ καὶ διὰ θαλάσσης: but I have elicited a sense, though I dare not say that it is correct.

³ I have given my reasons at large in the Commentary for placing Naoora, Tundis, and Mooziris at Onoor, Barceloor, and Mangaloor. They are founded on the authority of Major Rennell, who fixes Nelkunda at Neli-ceram; and on the correspondence of distances, which are nearly fifty miles between these three places respectively; and on the local circumstances at Neli-ceram.

⁴ εἰλματα Stuckius.

⁵ This accords with the site of Neli-ceram.

⁶ διὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἄλλατα καὶ διάπλους ἔχει ἐλαφροῦς. Corrected by Stuckius διὰ τὸν ποταμὸν εἰλματα καὶ διάπλους ἔχει ἐλαφροῦς. *Εἰλματα*, *loca caeposa*, is a good correction: *ἐλαφροῦς* is a dubious term; but the author has used it once before in a passage where the context requires *shallow*. Hesychius renders *ἐλαφρὰ* by τὰ μὴ βάθια: but this sense is not approved by the editor.

⁷ Δρακοντοειδῆς. I do not know the distinction between ὄφεις and δράκοντες.

αἱματώδεις. Πλεῖ δὲ εἰς τὰ ἐμπόρια
 ταῦτα πολλὰ πλοῖα, διὰ τὸν ὄγκον καὶ
 τὸ πλῆθος τῆ πεπέρειας καὶ τῆ μαλα-
 βάθρου. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν προσηγ-
 μένως χρηματὰ πλεῖστα, χρυσόλιθα, ἱμα-
 τισμοὶ ἀπλῆς οὐ παλὺς, πολύμιτα, τί-
 μη, κοράλλιον, ὕαλος ἀργῆ, χαλκός,
 κασσίτερος, μόλυβδος. Οἶνος δὲ οὐ πο-
 λύς, σῶζι δὲ τοσῶτον, ὅσον ἐν Βαρυ-
 γάζοις. Σανδαράκη, ἀρσενικόν. Σίτος
 δὲ, ὅσος ἀρκέσει τοῖς περὶ τὸ ναυκλήριον,
 διὰ τὸ μὴ τὰς ἐμπορίας αὐτῷ χρῆσθαι.
 Φέρεται δὲ πέπερι, μονογενῶς ἐν ἐνὶ τόπῳ
 τῷ τῶ ἐμπορίῳ γεννώμενον πολὺ, λε-
 γόμενον Κοπωναρικόν. Φέρεται δὲ καὶ μαρ-
 γαρίτης ἱκανὸς καὶ διάφορος, καὶ ἐλέφας,
 καὶ ὀθόνια σπρικὰ, καὶ νάρδος ἢ γαπα-
 νική, καὶ μαλάβαθρον ἐκ τῶν ἐσῶ τόπων
 εἰς αὐτὴν, καὶ λιθία διαφανῆς παντοία,
 καὶ ἀδάμας, καὶ ὑάκινθος, καὶ χελώνη,
 ἥτε Ὁρσοσητιωτικὴ, καὶ ἡ περὶ τὰς νή-
 σας θηρευομένη, τὰς προκειμένας αὐτῆς
 τῆς Λιμυρικῆς. Πλείεσι δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν οἱ
 κατὰ καιρὸν ἀναγόμενοι ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου
 περὶ τὸν Ἰάλιον μῆνα, ὅς ἐστιν Ἐπιφί.
 Τῶτον δὲ ὅλον τὸν εἰρημένον περίπλυν ἀπὸ
 Κανῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας, οἱ μὲν
 μικροτέροις πλοίοις περικολπίζοντες ἔ-
 πλεον. Πρῶτος δὲ Ἰππαλος κυβερνήτης,
 κατανοήσας τὴν θέσιν τῶν ἐμπορίων, καὶ

There is a great resort of shipping to
 this port for pepper and betel; the mer-
 chants bring out a large quantity of
 specie, and their other imports are to-
 pazes, a small assortment of plain cloth,
 stibium, coral, flint glass, brass, tin, lead,
 a small quantity of wine, as profitable as
 at Barugaza, cinnabar, fine cloth, arsenic,
 and wheat, not for sale, but for the use
 of the crew.

The principal article obtained here is
 PEPPER, which is the staple of the coun-
 try, as growing in the interior; it is brought
 down to this port in preference to all
 others, and is of that species called Cot-
 tonarikon, [from Canara the province
 where it grows.] Great quantities of
 the best pearl are likewise purchased here,
 [brought from Ceylon,] ivory, silk in the
 web, spikenard from the ^u Ganges, betel
 from the countries farther to the east,
 transparent stones of all sorts, diamonds,
 rubies, and tortoise shell from the golden
 Cherfonefe, or from the [Lackdive] islands
 off the coast of Limurikè.

The best season for the voyage is to
 leave Egypt in the month of July or Epi-
 phi; and this voyage was originally per-
 formed in small vessels from Kanè and
 Aden in ^x Arabia, which followed the
 coast during their whole passage.

But HIPPALUS was the first navigator
 who discovered the direct course across
 the ocean, by observing the position of

³ ταῦτα μετὰ πλοῖα Gelenius.
⁶ Χρυσσησιωτικὴ Stuckius.

⁴ τίλη ἀργὴ Gelenius.

⁵ Γαγγιὰ Stuckius. Rather Γαγγιτιὰ.

^u Νάρδος ἢ Γαπανική. Read Γαγγιτικὴ by Hud-
 son; and so used by the author below.

^x It is worthy of especial notice, that the author
 makes no mention of the voyages supposed to have

been performed under the Ptolemies from Egypt,
 but seems to confine the trade wholly to the Arabs
 of Yemen and Hadramaut.

τὸ ὄψωμα τῆς θαλάσσης, τὸν διὰ πελάγους ἐξεῦρε πλεῖν. Ἀφ' οὗ καὶ τοπικῶς ἐκ τῆς Ὠκεανῆς φυσάντων τῶν κατὰ καιρὸν, τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἐτησίων, ἐν τῷ Ἰνδικῷ πελάγει λιθόντοτος φαίνεται προσονομάζεσθαι, ἀπὸ τῆς προσηγορίας τῆς πρώτης ἐξευρηκότες τὸν διάπλεον. Ἀφ' οὗ μέχρι καὶ νῦν τινὲς μὲν εὐθὺς ἀπὸ Κανῆ, τινὲς δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν Ἀρωμάτων ἀφίεντες, οἱ μὲν εἰς Λιμυρικὴν πλέοντες, ἐπὶ πλεῖον τραχηλίζοντες, οἱ δὲ εἰς Βαρύγαζαν, οἱ δὲ εἰς Σκυθίαν, οὐ πλεῖον ἢ τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἀντέχουσι. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν παρεπιφέρων πρὸς ἴδιον δρόμον, ἐκ τῆς χώρας ὑψηλοὶ διὰ τῆς ἐξωθεν γῆς παραπλέουσι τὰς προειρημένους κόλπους. Ἀπ' Ἐλαβάκαρ⁷ τὸ λεγόμενον Πυρρὸν ὄρος, ἄλλη παρῆκε χώρα τῇ *** καὶ ἡ Παραλία λεγομένη, πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν νότον. Ἐν ἧς καὶ κολύμβησις ἐστὶν ὑπὸ τῇ βασιλείᾳ Πανδίωνα

the ports and the general appearance of the sea. For at the season when the annual winds peculiar to our climate fettle in the north, and blow for a continuance upon our coast from the Mediterranean; in the Indian ocean the wind is continually from the south-west. And this wind has in those seas obtained the name of Híppalus, from the pilot who first took advantage of it to make his passage to the east.

From the period of that discovery to the present time, vessels bound to India take their departure either from Kanè on the Arabian, or cape Arómata on the African side; and from these points they stretch out into the open sea at once, leaving all the windings of the gulphs and bays at a distance, and make for their several destinations on the coast of India: those that are intended for Limúrikè wait some time before they fail, but those that are destined for Barugáza or Scindi, seldom more than three days.

Upon leaving Ela-bakarè, or the Ruddy Ram d'Illi? Mountain, the country which succeeds is under the government of Pandion; it is called Parália, [or the coast, by way of preeminence,] and lies almost directly north and south; [as this coast winds

⁷ Ἐλαβάκαρ—Βαρεὰ before.

⁷ The expression is τραχηλίζοντες: what it expressly means, I cannot say. The verb signifies to twist the neck or head of an adversary in struggling or wrestling. Τραχηλίζοντες τὰς ναῦς might signify, turning the heads of their ships different ways, backwards and forwards; that is, tacking or cruising off Aromata or Kanè: but I have no authority better than conjecture for supposing that this is the sense of the author.

⁸ The text here has a chasm, which possibly contained another name of the country: ἀπ' Ἐλαβάκαρ τὸ λεγόμενον Πυρρὸν ὄρος, ἄλλη παρῆκε χώρα τῇ.....καὶ ἡ Παραλία λεγομένη. The chasm I have

⁸ Παραλία Gelenius.

filled up with τῆς Πανδονικῆς, but it is dubious. Elabákare may be the ruddy mountain, but rather, as I suppose, Ramdilli, which lies at the entrance of the Neliceram river; and then Πυρρὸν ὄρος ought to be mount D'Illi: but I do not know that that mountain is red. Red cliffs are noticed in modern geography both just previous to D'Illi, and lower down, near Anjengo; but the latter seem too low for our purpose: for I conceive Balita to be the capital of Malabar proper, like the modern Calicut: but the author is so brief, that I conclude he never was lower down than Nelkunda.

πινικῆ, καὶ πόλις ἡ λεγομένη Κόλχοι. Πρῶτος τόπος Βαλίτα καλέμενος, ὅρμον καλὸν ἔχων, καὶ κώμην παραθαλάσσιον. Ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης ἐστὶν ἕτερος τόπος τὸ Κομαρ λεγόμενος. Ἐν αὗ τῷ τόπῳ Ὁ Φρύσιον ἐστὶν, καὶ λιμὴν. Εἰς ἐν οἱ βυλόμενοι τὸν μέλλοντα αὐτοῖς χρόνον ἱεροὶ γενέσθαι, χῆροι μένουσιν αὐτῶ, ἐκεῖ ἐρχόμενοι ἀπολύονται. Τὸ δὲ αὐτὸ καὶ γυναῖκες. Ἰσορέται γὰρ τὴν θεὸν ἐκεῖ ἐπὶ μῆνας κατὰ τινὰ χρόνον ἐκεῖ ἀπολελῆσθαι. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Κομαρὲς ἐκτείνουσα χώρα μέχρι Κόλχων, ἐν ἣ καλύμνησις τῆς πινικῆς ἐστὶν, ἀπὸ δὲ κατακρισίων κατεργάζεται. Πρὸς τὸν νότον, ὑπὸ τὸν Πανδίωνά ἐστιν.

round again to the east] it reaches to Kolkhi, in the vicinity of the pearl fishery, and Pandion is sovereign of the whole.

But the first port after leaving the Ruddy Mountain, is Balita, and next to that is Komar, which has a fort and a Cape Comorin. This place is frequented for the purpose of ablution by those who have dedicated themselves to a religious life, and taken a vow of celibacy. Women as well as men are admitted into this institution; and the legend respecting it reports, that a goddess in some former period practised the same ablutions once a month at this spot.

From Komar the district extends to Kolkhi, and the pearl fishery; which is conducted by slaves or criminals condemned to this service; and this whole southern [point of the] continent is part of Pandion's dominion.

^a βριάριον Gelenius.

^a This society is said by Paolino still to exist, but at a place three leagues inland. The superstition, however, is the same, and Comar or Comorin takes its name from Canyamuri or Cumari, the virgin deity.

^b The court of Pandion was at Mádura, called Módufa by Pliny, and Modoora by Ptolemy; and by both placed far inland from the coast of Malabar, agreeing with its actual site. In the age of the Periplus, this sovereign must have extended his power over the whole of Malabar proper, Travancore, Marawa, and the pearl fishery; but in the age

of Ptolemy, Malabar, or the country of the Aii, was no longer part of his dominions. Pandion is probably a name common to all the kings of Mádura, for the natives of that province are called Pandoos and Pandavais in Sanskreet. Kolkhi, I have no doubt, is Raman-Coil in the island of Rami-ceram, near Manar, the seat of the pearl fishery. Coil signifies a temple, Raman-Coil the temple of Ram, Rami-ceram the island Ram. This temple or pagoda still exists; and Ram is a Hindoo deity, the fabulous conqueror of Ceylon with an army of monkeys.

ON MAMBARUS.

THE continual attention, which a regular translation requires, had led to the discovery of some few inaccuracies that occur in the commentary, which I have given on this work: but as they were not of importance, I have corrected them silently, without troubling the reader with an apology.

But there is one error which I regret, as it affects a material part of the work. For I have attributed the sovereignty of Ariake or Concan to Mámbarus, and I am now convinced that his dominion was Guzerat. For this portion of the error I can shelter myself under the corruption of the text;—but in order to render the text consistent, after having adopted the reading of Hudson, I made the Parthian power at Minnagar on the Indus extend over Guzerat, whereas in reality it embraced only Scindi and Kutch; and for this portion of the error I am accountable.

The text in the first edition stands thus; Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Βαράκην εὐδύς ἐστιν ὁ Βαρυγάζων κόλπος, καὶ ἡ πρὸς τῆς Ἀραβικῆς χώρας τῆς Μαμβάρου βασιλείας ἀρχή, καὶ τῆς ὅλης Ἰνδικῆς ὁσα. Ταύτης τὰ μὲν μεσόγεια τῆς Σκυθίας. &c.

For APABIKHΣ Hudson and Stuckius read APIAKHΣ. And it is evident Arabia can have here no relation to India. But still if Ἀριακῆς be substituted, the author does not mention the territory of Mámbarus by name, but says only, “*here is the commencement of the kingdom of Mambarus* [πρὸς] *towards Ariake, or, towards*

[*the confines of*] *Ariake.*

Let us next observe that Barugáza or Baroache is the principal mart of Guzerat; and that Ariakè is equivalent to Concan, the Pirate or Mahratta coast. If therefore the territory of Guzerat is undefined at its northern limit, and marked only by its southern boundary, our geography travels the contrary way, to our course; and this can only be reconciled by noticing, that we sail first, southerly to Diu head; and then come up the gulph of Cambay north, to the boundary between Guzerat and Concan. This interpretation is as circuitous as our course.

Under the pressure of this difficulty I have a conjecture to offer, which I submit to the judgement of the reader. That is, instead of APIAKHΣ I would substitute ΛΑΠΙΚΗΣ for APABIKHΣ. For ΛΑΡΙΚΕ^c is the title assigned to Guzerat by Ptolemy, and ΛΑΡ it is called by Abu’lfeda.

If this conjecture should be deemed admissible, I would read the whole passage thus;

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν Βαράκην, εὐδύς ἐστιν ὁ Βαρυγάζων κόλπος, καὶ ἡ τῆς ΛΑΠΙΚΗΣ χώρας τῆς Μαμβάρου βασιλείας ἀρχή, καὶ τῆς ὅλης Ἰνδικῆς ὅσα ταύτης.

Next to Barakè immediately succeeds the gulph of Barugáza, and the commencement of the ^a province of Lar, [which is] the kingdom of Mambarus, and the whole of ^b this part of India has the same commencement.

^a Λαρικὴ is an adjective like Ἰνδική. Λαρικῆς χώρας the province of Lar.

^b ταύτης is taken from the following sentence. This part of India is the peninsula.

I do not wish to lay greater stress on a conjectural emendation than it will bear; but if this should be thought admissible, it gives the arrangement of the provinces in exquisite order;

Minnagar and Su-
rastrénè, Scindi and } under the Parthian
Kutch, } government at
Minnagar.

Lárikè or Guzerat,—under Mámbarus.

Ariakè, Concan,
Kemkem, the Pi-
rate or Mahratta } under Sandánes,
coast, } successor to Sara-
gánus.

Limúrikè or Canara,—under Kepróbotas.

Parália or Malabar } under Pandíon.
proper,

The limits assigned to these provinces

by the Periplus continue to this day the respective limits of distinct languages peculiar to the several different countries; an usage in this instance which has prevailed over the lapse of ages, and the intrusions of conquest; and which preserves an indelible feature, by which the provinces may be distinguished after a course of eighteen centuries.

In short, if Nelkunda has been identified with Neli-ceram, (as I am persuaded the documents in the commentary will sufficiently prove,) the whole voyage, contained in the original work, has been ascertained from Muos Hormus in Egypt to the coast of Malabar.

^c This arrangement is conformable to the author's plan in both voyages, giving the marts or provinces, with their respective governments.

AFRICAN VOYAGE.

<i>Marts or provinces.</i>	<i>Government.</i>
Muos Hormus and Berenikè,	} Egypt.
Troglodytes,	
Moskhóphagi and Akridóphagi,	} Tribes under their respective chiefs.
Axúma and Adooli,	
Marts of Adel or Barbaria,	} Severally under chiefs.
Marts of Azania or Ajan,	
Rhapta and its dependencies,	} under Kharibaël and Kholaiбус, Arabs.

ORIENTAL VOYAGE.

<i>Marts or provinces.</i>	<i>Government.</i>
Arabia Petrèa,	under Malikhas.
Arabia Deserta Hejaz,	{ Bedoweens, called Kanraites.
Sabéans and Homérites,	
Maphartis South-West angle of Arabia,	} under Kholaiбус.
Hadramaut, or Incense country,	
Mazeira,	under priests.
South-east angle of Arabia, or modern Oman,	} under the king of Persia.
Apólogus, or Oboleh,	
Omana in Karmania,	under Arab chiefs.

SEQUEL

TO

THE PERIPLUS OF THE ERYTHREAN SEA.

ΜΕΤΑ δὲ Κόλχης ἐκδέχεται πρότερος αἰγιαλὸς ἐν κόλπῳ κείμενος, ἔχων χώραν μεσόγειον λεγόμενος Ἀργάλας. Ἐν ἐνὶ τόπῳ τερονεῖται παρ' αὐτὴν τῆς Ἡπιοδώρας συλλεγόμενοι πινικόν. Φέρονται γὰρ ἐξ αὐτῆς σινδόνες Ἑβαραγρέτιδες λεγόμεναι. Τῶν δὲ καὶ τέτων ἐμπορίων τὸ καὶ ὄρμων, ἐς οὓς οἱ τε ἀπὸ τῆς Λιμυρικῆς καὶ ἀπὸ ἄρκτε πλέοντες κατάγονται, ἐπισημότερα καὶ κατὰ τὸ ἐξῆς κείμενά ἐστιν ἐμπορία, Καμάρα, καὶ Ποδέκη, καὶ Σωπάτμα. Ἐν οἷς τοπικὰ μὲν ἐστὶν πλοῖα μέχρι Λιμυρικῆς παραλεγόμενα τὴν γῆν. Ἑτέρα δὲ ἐκ μονοξύλων πλοίων μεγίστων ὅφ' ἧς ἐξευγμένων, λεγόμενα Σάγγαρα. Τὰ δὲ εἰς τὴν Χρυσὴν καὶ εἰς τὸν Γάγγην διάφροντα κολανδιόφοντα τὰ μέγιστα. Προχωρεῖ δὲ εἰς τὰς τόπας τὰς

THE first place that succeeds after leaving Kolkhi is the bay ^a Argalus, connected with a district inland [of the same name]. Here, and here only, the pearls obtained in the fishery at the island of Epiodorus are [allowed to be] perforated ^b Manar. and prepared for the market. And from the same island are procured the fine ^b mullins sprinkled with pearls.

Proceeding from Argalus, the most conspicuous of all the marts and anchorages on the coast are Kámara, Podooka, and Caveri. Sopatma. To these the traders from Li-Soro-patma, mûrikè, and the other provinces north of ^{or Coromandel?} Limûrikè, resort: and in these marts are ^{Canara.} found the native vessels which make coasting voyages to Limûrikè, the ^c Monoxûla of the largest fort called Sângara, and others styled Colandiophonta, which are vessels of great bulk, adapted to the voyages made to the Ganges and the Golden Cherfonefe.

^a Μαργαρίτιδες Salmasius.

^a ὅφ' ἧς Hudfon and Gelenius.

^a This bay in our charts has no native name; but it is called Palk's Passage. It extends from Ramanadaburam to Point Kalymere; the coast round it is Marawar and the country of Tondiman.

^b Σινδόνες μαργαρίτιδες, mullins ornamented

with pearls. Salmasius.

^c Monoxûla are not vessels made out of a single tree, but which have a single piece of timber for their keel or bottom, from which the planking of the sides is raised without ribs. Such vessels are still in use on this coast, able to carry 150 men.

τας, πάντα τὰ εἰς τὴν Λιμυρικὴν ἐργαζόμενα, καὶ σχεδὸν εἰς αὐτὰς καταναῖ. Τὸ δὲ χεῖμα τὸ ἀπ' Αἰγύπτου φερόμενον τῷ παντὶ χρόνῳ, * καλὰ πλεῖστα γένη πάντων τῶν ἀπὸ Λιμυρικῆς φερομένων, διὰ ταύτης τῆς παραλίας ἐπιχορηγούμενων. Περὶ δὲ τῶν μετ' αὐτὴν χωρῶν ἤδη πρὸς ἀνατολὴν τῷ πλοῦς ἀπονέυοντος, εἰς πέλαιγος ἐκκεῖται πρὸς αὐτὴν τὴν δύσιν, νήσος λεγομένη ³Παλαισιμύνδε, παρὰ δὲ τοῖς ἀρχαίοις αὐτῶν Ταπρόβανη. Ταύτης τὰ μὲν πρὸς βορρᾶν εἰς ἡμέρας, ⁴ καὶ διαπλεῖται τὸ πλεῖον εἰκοσινῇ, καὶ σχεδὸν εἰς τὸ κατ' αὐτῆς ἀντιπαρακείμενον Ἀζανίας παρήκει. Γίνεται δὲ ἐν αὐτῇ πινικὸν καὶ λιθία διαφανῆς, καὶ σινδόνες, καὶ χελῶνας. Περὶ δὲ τέρας τὰς τόπας, πολλὴ τῆς μεσογείας παρήκυσσα, Μασαλία παρ᾿ ἐκεῖται χώρα. Γίνονται ἐν αὐτῇ σινδόνες πλεῖστα. Ἀπὸ δὲ ταύτης, εἰς αὐτὴν τὴν ἀνατολὴν διαπεράσαντι τὴν παρακείμενον κόλπον, ἡ Δησαρήνη χώρα, Φέρυσσα ἐλέφαντα, τὸν λεγόμενον βωσαρή. Καὶ μετ' αὐτὴν, εἰς τὸν βορρᾶν ἤδη ἀπονέυοντος τῷ πλοῦς, βάρεβαρα πολλὰ ἔθνη, ἐν οἷς οἱ Κιρράδαί, γένος ἀνθρώπων, ἐκ-

To these marts are brought all the articles prepared [in Egypt] for the market of Limúrikè; and almost all the specie, of which Egypt is continually drained by its trade with Limúrikè, finally centres in this coast, as well as all the produce of Coromandel. Limúrikè itself.

But after passing Limúrikè and the provinces next in ^d succession, the coast winds round to the east; and, as the vessel takes this direction in her course, the island now called Palaifimondus, but formerly Tapróbana, lies out in the open Ceylon. sea to the west. The northern part of this island is civilized, ^e but the passage to it from the continent is seldom performed in less than twenty days. The whole extent is so large that it reaches almost to the opposite ^f coast of Azania [in Africa;] ^{Ajan. Zanguebar.} and here, pearls, precious stones, fine muslins, and tortoise shell are to be obtained.

But [returning now to the coast of Coromandel; above Kámara, Podooka, and Sopatma lies] Masalia, a district which ^{Masulipatam.} extends far inland. In this country a great quantity of the finest muslins are manufactured: and from Masalia the course lies eastward across a bay to Desarênè, where the ivory is procured of that species called Bôfarè ^g.

Leaving Desarênè, the course is north-erly ^h, passing a variety of barbarous tribes, one of which is styled ⁱ Kirrhadæ,

³ πάλαι Σιμύνδην Gelenius.

⁴ καὶ διαπλεῖται ταῖς-εἰς τὸν πλοῦς-αἰγύπτου Gelenius; for which Salmasius reads εἰς τὴν ἰσχυρομένην νησί: (Q. ταῖς) but Vossius τὸ πλεῖον εἰκοσινῇ, much nearer the text. * καὶ τὰ?

^d Malabar proper, Travancore, and Tinivelli.

^e The text is corrupt; but in the first edition it is written εἰς τὸν πλοῦς-αἰγύπτου, corrected by Vossius, τὸ πλεῖον εἰκοσινῇ, for the most part in twenty days. This correction is supported by Strabo, πλεῖον ἡμερῶν εἰκοσι.

^f This error, relative to the magnitude of Ceylon, was perpetuated till the time of Gama; but in no author is the extent carried so far as in the Periplus.

^g I would willingly suppose this to be the horn of the rhinoceros, called βῦς μονοκερῶς: but the author has distinguished that by the term *rhinoceros*, on the coast of Africa.

^h I am afraid our course has been hitherto easterly all the way from Argalus.

ⁱ The Kirrhadæ of Ptolemy are on the east of the Ganges, and he is probably correct; as they seem to correspond with the Kadrange of oriental geography, which I take to be Arracan.

τεθλιμμένων τὴν ῥίνα, ἀγρίων. Καὶ Βαρ-
γύσων, ἕτερον ἔθνος. Καὶ τὸ τῶν ἵππιο-
προσώπων, μακροπροσώπων, λεγόμενον
ἀνθρωποφάγων εἶναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα,
εἰς τὴν ἀνατολὴν καὶ τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἐν δεξιοῖς
ἐχόντων, εὐώνυμα δὲ τὰ λοιπὰ μέρη ἔξ-
ωθεν παραπλεόντων, ὁ Γάγγης ἀπαντᾷ,
καὶ ἡ περὶ αὐτὸν ἐσχάτη τῆς ἀνατολῆς
ἡπειρος ἡ Χρυσῇ. Ποταμὸς δὲ ἐστὶν περὶ
αὐτὸν, ὁ Γάγγης λεγόμενος, καὶ αὐτὸς μέ-
γιστος τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἰνδικήν, ἀπόβασιν
τε καὶ ἀνάβασιν τὴν αὐτὴν ἔχων τῷ Νεί-
λῳ. Καθ' ὃν καὶ ἐμπόριον ἐστὶν ὁμώνυμον
τῷ ποταμῷ ὁ Γάγγης, δι' οὗ φέρεται τό-
τε μαλαβάθρον, καὶ ἡ Γαγγίτικὴ νάρδος,
καὶ πινικὸν, καὶ σινδόνες αἱ διαφορώταται,
αἱ Γαγγίτικαὶ λεγόμεναι. Λέγεται δὲ καὶ
χρυσωρύχια περὶ τὰς τόπας εἶναι, νόμι-
σμά τε χρυσᾶ, ὁ λεγόμενος Κάλτις.
Κατ' αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν νῆσος ἐστὶν
Ὀκεάνιος, ἐσχάτη τῶν πρὸς ἀνατολὴν με-
ρῶν τῆς οἰκουμένης, ὅπ' αὐτὸν ἀνέχοντα
τὸ ἥλιον, καλεσμένη Χρυσῇ, χελώνην ἔχου-
σα πάντων τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἐρυθρὰν τόπων
ἀρίστην. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ὑπ'
αὐτὸν ἤδη τὸν βορέαν, ἔξωθεν εἰς Σινῶν
τινα τόπον ἀποληγούσης τῆς θαλάσσης,
παράκειται ἐν αὐτῇ πόλις μεσόγειος με-

a savage race with noses flattened to the face. Another tribe are the Bargusi, and there are others distinguished by the projection of the face, like that of the horse, and others by the length of the head from the forehead to the chin; both which tribes are said to be cannibals.

After passing these, the course turns again to the east, and, proceeding with the coast on the left, and the sea on the right, you arrive at the Ganges, and the extremity of the continent towards the east, called Khruse, [or the Golden Cher-

The peninsula of Ava, &c.

sonefe.] The Ganges is the largest river of India; it has an annual increase and decrease, like the Nile; and there is a mart on it of the same name, through which passes a considerable traffic, consisting of pearls, betel, the Gangetic spikenard, and Gangetic muslins, which are the finest manufacture of the sort.

In this province also is said to be a gold mine, and a gold coin called Kal-

tis. Immediately upon leaving the Ganges there is an island in the ocean, of great celebrity, called Khruse, or the Golden Isle, which lies directly under the rising sun, and at the extremity of the world towards the east. This island produces the finest tortoise shell that is found throughout the whole of the Erythræan sea.

The Indian ocean.

But still beyond this, immediately under the north, at a certain point, where the exterior sea terminates, lies a city called

⁵ ὅπ' αὐτὸν ἀνέχοντα τὸν ἥλιον κλειμένη χρυσῇ χελώνη *Khruse* Gelenius. Καλεσμένη Χρυσῇ is a better reading, but κλειμένη is preferable to καλεσμένη, famous, celebrated.

⁶ εἰς τινα τόπον ἀποληγούσης Gelenius.

^k The wildest tribes of India are in the northern parts of Orissa; but when an author turns them into monsters, we know that he is at the extent of his knowledge.

^l The expression is λέγεται: a proof, apparently, that the author speaks from report only.

^m Kurdeen or Kardeen is still applied to gold, or a gold coin, in Bengal.

γίση, λογομένη Θίνα. Ἀφ' ἧς τό τε ἔριον, καὶ τὸ νῆμα, καὶ τὸ ὀθόνιον τὸ σηρικόν, εἰς τὸν Βαρύγαζαν διὰ Βάκτρων περὶ φέρεται. Καὶ εἰς τὴν Λιμυρικὴν πάλιν διὰ τῆς Γάγλης ποταμῆς. Εἰς δὲ τὴν Θίνα ταύτην οὐκ ἔστιν εὐχερῶς ἀπελθεῖν. Σπανίως γὰρ ἀπ' αὐτῆς τινες οὐ πολλοὶ ἔρχονται. Κεῖται δὲ ὁ τόπος ἐπ' αὐτὴν τὴν μικρὰν ἄρκτον. Λέγεται δὲ συνορίζει τοῖς ἀπετραμμένοις μέρεσι τῆς Πόντου, καὶ τῆς Κασπίας θαλάσσης, καθ' ἣν ἡ παρακειμένη λίμνη Μαιώτις εἰς τὸν ὠκεανὸν συνανατομῆσα. Κατ' ἔτος δὲ παραγίνεται ἐπὶ τὴν συνορίαν τῆς Θίνης ἔθνος τι, τῷ μὲν σάμαλι κολοβοὶ καὶ σφόδρα πλατυπρόσωποι, σιμοὶ εἰς τέλος, αὐτὰς δὲ λέγεσθαι Σησάτας, παρομοίας ἀνημέροις. Παραγίνονται σὺν γυναῖξιν καὶ τέκνοις, βασιάζοντες φορτία μεγάλα ἐν ταρπόναις, ὠμαμπελίνων παραπλήσια.

Thina, not on the coast, but inland; from which both the raw material, and manufactured filk, are brought by land through Bactria to Barugaza; or else down the Ganges [to Bengal,] and thence by sea to Limurikè on the coast of Malabar.

Canara.

ⁿ To Thina itself the means of approach are very difficult; and from Thina some few [merchants] come, but very rarely: for it lies [far remote] under the constellation of the lesser bear, and is said to join the confines of the Euxine sea, the Caspian, and the lake Mæotis, which issues at the same mouth with the Caspian into the northern ocean.

On the confines of Thina an annual fair or mart is established; for the Sefatæ, Tartars of who are a wild uncivilized tribe, assemble there with their wives and children. They are described as a race of men squat and thick set, with their face broad, and their nose greatly depressed. The articles they bring for trade are of great bulk, and enveloped in mats or sacks, which in their outward appearance resemble the early leaves of the vine. Their place of

ⁿ We are to understand by this strange passage, 1. That the coast of China lies open to a great ocean on the east, (now the Pacific ocean.) 2. That the capital of China lies in a high northern latitude, as Pekin does in 40°, (but not under the bear-star.) 3. That the sea is not farther navigable to the north. 4. That the filk of China passes one way, through Tartary to Bactria, and thence by the Indus down to Guzerat; and, by another route, down the Ganges to Bengal, and from Bengal to the coasts of Coromandel and of Malabar. See the Commentary and Dissertation. 5. That the dominion of China extends far through Tartary to the west. And, 6. That the Caspian and Pulus Mæotis communicate with the northern ocean, (which is an ancient error.)

^o Τοῖς ἀπετραμμένοις μέρεσι τῆς Πόντου, &c. The country of China reaches to the limits of those

regions which front (north) to another sea. He has used ἀπετραμμένοις once before in this sense, when he places the Atlantic at the back of Libya, Africa, &c.

^p This description can refer to no nation but a tribe of Tartars; the Bésadæ of Ptolemy have the same attributes, and are apparently the same people. He places them N. E. of the Ganges. They may be in any site from Affam to Thibet or Boudtan. We learn from Goez, that eight tribes of Tartars came to trade on the confines of China, under pretence of embassies.

^q The betel is a species of the pepper-plant; the fruit grows on a vine, the leaves of which are wrapped round the areka-nut, with other ingredients, and is then called betel-nut, or betre, from *petros*. This mode of manufacture will perhaps explain why the mats are said to be of the colour of vine-

Εἴτ' ἐνεπιμένουσιν ἐπὶ τινὰ τόπον τῆς συν-
ορίας αὐτῶν, καὶ τῶν ὑπὸ τῆς Θίνας. Καὶ
ὀρτάζουσιν ἐπὶ τινὰς ἡμέρας, ὑποστρώσαν-
τες ἑαυτοῖς τὰς ταρπύνας, καὶ ἀπαύουσιν
εἰς τὰ ἰδία εἰς τὰς ἐσωτέρους τόπους. Οἱ
δὲ ταῦτα δοκῶντες τότε παραινοῦνται ἐπὶ
τὰς τόπους, καὶ συλλέγουσι τὰ ἐκένων ὑπο-
στρώματα, καὶ ἐξινιάσαντες καλάμους τὰς
λεγομένους πέτρους ἐπὶ λεπτοῖν ἐπιδιπλώ-
σαντες τὰ Φύλλα καὶ σφαιροειδῆ ποιῶντες,
διείρουσι ταῖς ἀπὸ τῶν καλάμων ἵνας.
Γίνεται ὃ γένη τρία. Ἐκ μὲν τῷ μέζονος
Φύλλου, τὸ ἀδρόσφαιρον μαλάβαθρον λε-
γόμενον. Ἐκ δὲ τῷ ὑποδεεστέρῳ, τὸ με-
σόσφαιρον. Ἐκ δὲ τῷ μικροτέρῳ, τὸ μι-
κρόσφαιρον. Ἐνθεν τὰ τρία μέρη τῷ μα-
λαβάθρῳ γίνεται, καὶ τότε φέρεται εἰς
τὴν Ἰνδικὴν ὑπὸ τῷ κατεργαζομένων αὐτά.
Τὰ δὲ μετὰ τὰς τόπους, διὰ τε ὑπερβο-
λὰς χειμῶνων, καὶ πάσης μεγίστης δυσ-
βάτων τῶν τόπων, εἴτα καὶ θεῶν τινὲς δυνά-
μει θεῶν, ἀνερεύνητά ἐστιν.

assembly is between their own borders
and those of Thina; and here, spreading
out their mats, on which they sit [and
exhibit their goods for sale,] they hold a
feast [or 'fair'] for several days, and at the
conclusion of it return to their country in
the interior.

Upon their retreat, the Thinae, who
have continued on the watch, repair to
the spot, and collect the mats which the
strangers left behind at their departure;
from these they pick out the haulm
which is called PETROS, and, drawing
out the fibres, spread the leaves double,
and make them up into balls, passing the
fibres through them. Of these balls there
are three sorts, the large, the middle
sized, and the small; in this form they
take the name of Malá-bathrum, and
under this denomination the three sorts
of that masticatory are brought into
India, by those who prepare them [for
the market.]

All the regions beyond Thina [towards
the north] are unexplored, either on ac-
count of the severity of the winter, the
continuance of the frosts, or the difficulty
of the country; perhaps also the will of
the gods has fixed these limits to the
curiosity of man.

leaves: the rolling up of these leaves—the drawing
out of the fibres—the rolling up into balls, &c. and
however inadequate the description may be, it
proves that the *mala-bathrum* of the ancients is the
betre, or *petros*.

' It is ἀρπάζουσιν in the original, which Salma-
sius reads ὀρτάζουσιν. Perhaps ἀγοράζουσιν is bet-
ter, and approaches nearer to ἀρπάζουσιν, which
is nonsense.

*Notices received since the publication of the Second Edition of the
Commerce of the Ancients in the Indian Ocean.*

Vol. I. p. 174.

THE title of Nullah Sunkra is applied to the easternmost branch of the Indus; but Colonel Reynolds, who has been employed many years upon a survey of India, has found, that the western branch, usually called the Laribundar river, is the true Nullah Sunkra. The mistake was derived from Frezier's account of Nadir Shah's treaty with the Mogul emperor, in which the province of Tatta is ceded to Nadir, and it was concluded that the Pattalênè or Delta of the Indus was the more especial part of that province.

Vol. I. p. 185.

Rhambakia. There is a *castle of Rham* mentioned in Nadir Shah's treaty; it is the same as Rham-baugh, the *garden of Rham*, found by Colonel Reynolds at the head of Crotchey bay. This site does not accord with the marches of Alexander, but doubtless Rham-baugh and Rhambakia are in some sense or other allied.

It may be well imagined that Colonel Reynolds, whose attention was more particularly directed to the countries on the Indus, will be enabled to throw great light on the transactions of Alexander in that quarter, and the course of the fleet down the river. Very happy should I have been to have received the information and corrections of so able a geographer. But the voyage of Nearchus could be conducted only on such intelligence as was previously in existence; and I have

the satisfaction to know from Colonel Reynolds, that my general outline is correct, notwithstanding some errors in particulars.

Vol. II. p. 531.

The Adulitic inscription is described by Cosmas, with whom it originates, as consisting of two parts, one engraved upon a chair or throne, and the other upon a tablet; but both parts are supposed by Cosmas to relate to one of the Ptolemies.

The commentators also who have published this inscription from Cosmas, as Leo Allatius, Berkelius, Spon, Melchizedec Thevenot, Chishull, and Montfaucon, all agree in the same opinion, and conclude that Ptolemy Euérgetes is the sovereign designed.

Berger, Valkenaer, and others, who object to the authenticity of the inscription, seem never to have suspected that the two different parts relate to different persons.

But time has produced a discovery, of which no one was aware. For Lord Valentia has visited Abyssinia, and his Secretary Mr. Salt has met with an inscription at Axum, which proves that the tablet only relates to Euérgetes, and that the inscription on the chair is appropriate to Aëisânas, a king of Abyssinia in the fourth century.

That such a prince did reign in Abyssinia, he proves by a letter directed to a sovereign of this name by the Emperor Constantius, by the coincidence of his

reign with that of Constantius, by the duration of his reign for seven and twenty years, and by the assumption of his descent from Mars; whereas the tablet derives the pedigree of Ptolemy from Hercules on the father's side, from Dionysus and Jupiter on the mother's.

Mr. Salt from these premises concludes therefore, that the tablet only relates to Ptolemy, and the chair to Aëfanas; and that they contain distinct inscriptions to different persons.

As I had bestowed much time on this inscription, I cannot help feeling some disappointment from the reflection that my labour has been thrown away; but integrity requires that, being convinced, I should acknowledge my conviction.

Mr. Salt indeed has made ample amends for my disappointment by the share he has allotted me in the unraveling of the

inscription (Vol. III. p. 184.) But he imputes a doubt to me, as suspecting that *αρχισου* might be the unknown name of a month. Such a doubt I had upon my first communication with him upon the subject; but upon a second view I saw it was *αρχης ου*, and immediately imparted the correction to Lord Valentia. As this correction was adopted, and *αρχης ου* received into the Greek text, and as it was rendered accurately in the English "till the time that," I could have wished that my first crude conjecture had been suppressed. But I have no right to complain; due justice has been rendered to the full extent of my wishes; and though I am forced to abandon a favourite dissertation, I feel that it was constructed on firm ground, when it required a journey into the heart of Abyssinia to convince me of my mistake.

Vol. 71. p. 445.

Nelica-Scram. If Nelica-Scram or Coram were the true Orthography, as Orme writes it, there is nothing wrong in interpreting it the Rice-Country, as derived from the Etymology of Paolino. but according to D.^r Buchanan, Vol. III. p. 10. the true Orthography is Nil-Swara, equivalent to Nil-Kunda, both, titles of Siva. For Nil-Swara is the blue Deity and Nil-Kunda [the Deity with] the blue neck. (see

Buchanan Vol. III. p. 261.) hence it is demonstrable that the ancient Nil-Kunda & the modern Nil-Swara are identified, & the proof is complete. It appears likewise that the Jains & other cast on this part of the coast styled Siva-Baktars are worshippers of Siva, in preference to Brahma & Vishnu; from which circumstance, the name of the place in both instances is derived. see Buch. passim.

see Capt. Wilford's Essay on the Hindu Gods. c. 11. & 12. & 13. & 14. & 15. & 16. & 17. & 18. & 19. & 20. & 21. & 22. & 23. & 24. & 25. & 26. & 27. & 28. & 29. & 30. & 31. & 32. & 33. & 34. & 35. & 36. & 37. & 38. & 39. & 40. & 41. & 42. & 43. & 44. & 45. & 46. & 47. & 48. & 49. & 50. & 51. & 52. & 53. & 54. & 55. & 56. & 57. & 58. & 59. & 60. & 61. & 62. & 63. & 64. & 65. & 66. & 67. & 68. & 69. & 70. & 71. & 72. & 73. & 74. & 75. & 76. & 77. & 78. & 79. & 80. & 81. & 82. & 83. & 84. & 85. & 86. & 87. & 88. & 89. & 90. & 91. & 92. & 93. & 94. & 95. & 96. & 97. & 98. & 99. & 100.

ERRORS.

- P. 27. lin. penult. *for ἄνοι, ἰχθυίς read ἄνοι ἰχθυίς.*
P. 29. lin. 21. *for expedition read expedition.*
P. 41. lin. 4. *for which having accomplished read this they accomplished; and then.*
P. 42. lin. 28. *for and that to take the place by force would require the delay of a siege read and that the delay of a siege was destructive.*
P. 38. *lin 5 from the bottom. for considerably read considerably.*
P. 48. *lin. 15. for forty read an hundred & fifty.*
P. 62. *margin. for Tab or Indian read Tab or Indian.*
P. 67. *lin. 1. for this read his.*
P. 81. *note. 9. for Quitea read Quiloa.*
P. 91. *lin. 26. for steep too read steep to.*



